

ELMAR H. ABDULRAHIMOV

**THE ABC  
OF**

**THE HISTORY OF THE  
ENGLISH LANGUAGE**

ƒ ʒ 4 ǀ ǂ ǃ Ǆ

MINISTRY OF EDUCATION  
OF AZERBAIJAN REPUBLIC  
AZERBAIJAN UNIVERSITY OF LANGUAGES

*ELMAR H. ABDULRAHIMOV*

**THE ABC  
OF  
THE HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH  
LANGUAGE**

**(“İngilis dilinin tarixi” fənnindən dərs vəsaiti)**

*Azərbaycan Respublikası Təhsil  
nazirinin 29.04.2005-ci il  
tarixli 293 saylı əmri ilə çapa  
tövsiyə edilmişdir.*

*By the order of Minister  
of Education of Azerbaijan  
Republic the stamp was given  
(Order No. 293, on 29.04.2005)*

Baku -  - 2005

Redaktor:  
*filologiya elmləri namizədi,*  
*dosent **M.M.Paşayeva***

Editor:  
*associate professor, candidate*  
*of Philology **M.M.Pashayeva***

Rəyçilər:  
*filologiya elmləri doktoru,*  
*professor **Ə.Ə.Abdullayev,***  
*filologiya elmləri namizədi,*  
*dosent **S.N.Cavadova***

Reviewers:  
*Doctor of Philology,*  
*professor **A.A.Abdullayev,***  
*candidate of Philology,*  
*associate professor*  
***S.M.Javadova***

All rights reserved. 2005. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, recording without written permission of the publishers.

A  $\frac{4306010000}{026}$  49-05

© Mütərcim, 2005

## CONTENTS

Preface .....	4
List of Abbreviations and Symbols .....	6
<b>Section I.</b> Reference Tables .....	8
List of Inflectional Suffixes .....	108
List of Derivational Suffixes .....	115
List of Derivational Prefixes .....	119
Some Proverbs Displaying the Survivals from Old and Middle English .....	121
The Life of Unusual Words .....	132
An Excerpt from Ælfric's Cosmology (Old English Text) and its Essential Vocabulary .....	142
<b>Section 2.</b> Glossary of Terms .....	166
<b>Section 3.</b> Chronology of Historical Events affecting the English Language .....	239
Chronology of the English Language and Literature .....	243
1. Historical Phonetics and Spelling .....	251
2. Historical Grammar .....	254
3. Historical Lexicology .....	258
<i>Bibliographical References and Background Reading</i> .....	260

## PREFACE

The present manual is intended for students and post-graduate students of English language departments at universities, as well as those who are interested in the historical development of the English language. Students and teachers of English may obtain some historical insights into the development of different aspects, irregularities and inconsistencies of present-day English and find the manual of some interest.

The manual consists of three sections. The first section includes illustrated reference tables with examples making the linguistic notions easier to remember. Phonetic, grammatical and lexical development and changes in the history of English are treated systematically and in chronological sequence. The schemes and tables can be used as an aid to the thorough study of linguistic phenomena in different periods of English. This section also includes a list of inflectional and derivational suffixes used in different periods and some proverbs displaying the survivals from the Old and Middle English.

The second section contains a glossary of terms used in the course of the history of the English language, which are helpful to the reader in understanding the linguistic changes in the English historical phonetics, spelling, grammar and lexicon.

The third section includes chronology of phonetic, grammatical and semantic changes and historical events affecting the development of the English language and literature.

The manual is also supplemented with an excerpt from the original Old English text of “De Temporibus Anni” by Ælfric, the Anglo-Saxon author with its Azerbaijani translation

and the analysis of the essential vocabulary made by the editor of this manual associate professor M.M.Pashayeva.

The goal of presenting the course of the History of the English Language is to make it accessible to a reader.

The selected bibliography has been brought up to date and some suggestions for supplementary reading have also been introduced.

I am indebted to my teacher and editor of this manual associate professor M.M Pashayeva and its reviewers for their suggestions and helpful comments.

*The Author*

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

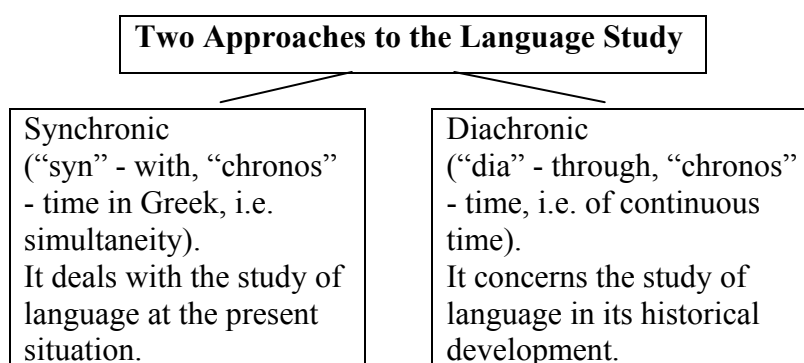
A.,acc.	accusative (case)
c.	century
cf.	confer, compare
cons.	consonant
D.	dative (case)
e.g.	for example (Latin: <i>exempli gratia</i> )
EModE	Early Modern English
ENE	Early New English
f.	feminine gender
Fr.	French
G.	Genitive (case)
Gk.	Greek
Goth.	Gothic
IE	Indo-European
Ins.	Instrumental case
i.e.	that is ( <i>id est</i> )
irreg.	irregular
Lat.	Latin
m.	masculine gender
ME	Middle English
ModE	Modern English
n.	1.noun; 2.neuter
N., nom.	Nominative
North.	Northern
OE	Old English
OHG	Old High German
OIcl.	Old Icelandic
ON	Old Norse
O.Sax.	Old Saxon
O.Sc.	Old Scandinavian
PG	Proto-Germanic

p., pers.	person
pl.	plural
pres.	present (tense)
p.t.	past tense
pp	past participle
Rus.	Russian
Scand.	Scandinavian
Snsk.	Sanskrit
sg.	singular
str.v.	strong verb
v.	verb
w.v.	weak verb
-	over a vowel indicates that the vowel is long.
>	stands for “changed to, becomes”
<	stands for “changed from, derived from”
*	marks hypothetical (i.e. supposed) forms
/	1. it indicates alternation of sounds; 2. it is placed between variants of a grammatical form or a morpheme.
ȳ	it denotes a long vowel [y:] in Old English
ǣ	it denotes a long vowel [æ:] in Old English



## SECTION 1. REFERENCE TABLES

**Table 1**



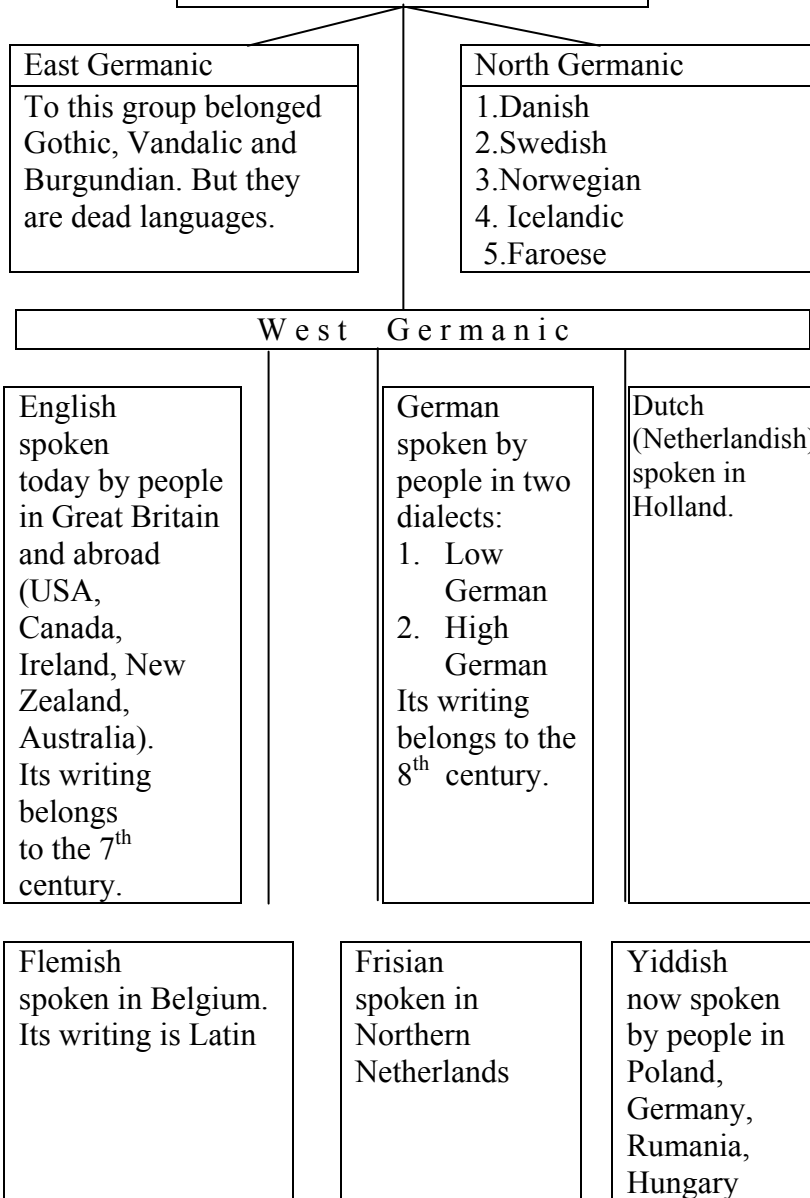
**Table 2 Similarity in the Vocabulary  
of English and Other Languages**

<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 50%;">English</th> <th style="width: 50%;">German</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>summer</td><td>Sommer</td></tr> <tr><td>winter</td><td>Winter</td></tr> <tr><td>sing</td><td>singen</td></tr> <tr><td>long</td><td>lang</td></tr> <tr><td>sit</td><td>sitzen</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	English	German	summer	Sommer	winter	Winter	sing	singen	long	lang	sit	sitzen	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 50%;">English</th> <th style="width: 50%;">French</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>autumn</td><td>autumne</td></tr> <tr><td>river</td><td>riviere</td></tr> <tr><td>change</td><td>changer</td></tr> <tr><td>army</td><td>armee</td></tr> <tr><td>general</td><td>general</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	English	French	autumn	autumne	river	riviere	change	changer	army	armee	general	general
English	German																								
summer	Sommer																								
winter	Winter																								
sing	singen																								
long	lang																								
sit	sitzen																								
English	French																								
autumn	autumne																								
river	riviere																								
change	changer																								
army	armee																								
general	general																								

Other Germanic languages	English	Romance languages
German    Frieden	peace (cf. OE frið)	French    paix
Swedish    fred		Latin    pace
Dutch    vrede		Spanish    paz
German    Heer	army (cf. OE here)	French    armee

**Table 3**

**Germanic Group of Languages**



**Table 4**

<b>Writing of the Germanic Languages</b>		
1. Runes These inscriptions were written on the cliffs, on the stones, on the abornments. This alphabet was used in the 2 <sup>nd</sup> and 3 <sup>rd</sup> centuries of our era for religious purposes.	2. Gothic or Vulfilian Alphabet This writing was founded by West Gothic bishop Vulfila at the end of the 4 <sup>th</sup> century.	The Latin Alphabet. This alphabet began to be used in Germanic languages after the spreading of Christianity. Beginning with the 7 <sup>th</sup> –9 <sup>th</sup> centuries the texts were written in Latin alphabet in the Germanic languages.

**Table 5**

**Two Consonant Shifts in Germanic Languages**

The first shifting occurred before the 4<sup>th</sup> century; the second had been completed by the 8<sup>th</sup> c. The first relates to the Low German group; the second to the High German.

Indo-European	Low German	High German
bh	b	p (b)
dh	d	t
gh	g	k (g)
b	p	ff (f)
d	t	zz (z)
g	k	hh (h)
p	f	
t	th	
k	h	

**Table 6 Jacob Grimm's Law**

Indo-European	Germanic
1 voiceless stops	voiceless fricatives
p t k	f þ h
Lat. pater Lat. trēs Gk. kardia	OE fæder "father" Goth þries "three" OHG herza "heart"
2 voiced stops	voiceless stops
b d g	p t k
Rus. болога Lat. duo Gk. egon	OE pōl "pool" Goth twai "two" Oicl ek "I"
3 voiced aspirated stops	voiced non-aspirated stops
bh dh gh	b d g
Snsk bhratar Rus. брат Snsk madhu Rus. мед *Snsk songha	OE brōðor "brother"  OE medu "mead"  Oicl syngva "sing"

**Table 7 Karl Verner's Law**

Indo-European				Germanic	
p t k s				b ð d g z r	
Gk.	hepta			Goth.	sibun "seven"
Gk.	pater			OSc.	Faðir; OE fæder "father"
Gk.	dekas			Goth.	tigus "ten, a dozen"
				Goth.	aiz, OHG ēr "bronze"
OE	cēo <u>s</u> an	cēa <u>s</u>	cu <u>r</u> on	co <u>r</u> en	"to choose"
OIcl.	kió <u>s</u> a	ka <u>s</u>	kø <u>r</u> om	kø <u>r</u> enn	
Goth.	kiu <u>s</u> an	ka <u>s</u>	ku <u>s</u> um	ku <u>s</u> ans	

12

**Table 8 Voicing of Consonants**

Medial f → v	septēm-séven, carpēre-hárvest				
Medial θ → ð	pitār-fáther				
Medial s → z → r	IE *wes → Germanic *wæs → OE wáeron → were				
Medial x → γ → g	IE *dherāgh → OE dragan → draw				
IE	bh → b	t → θ	θ → ð	stress shift	
	*bhratēr > *brotór > *broθór > *broðór > *bróðor > brother				

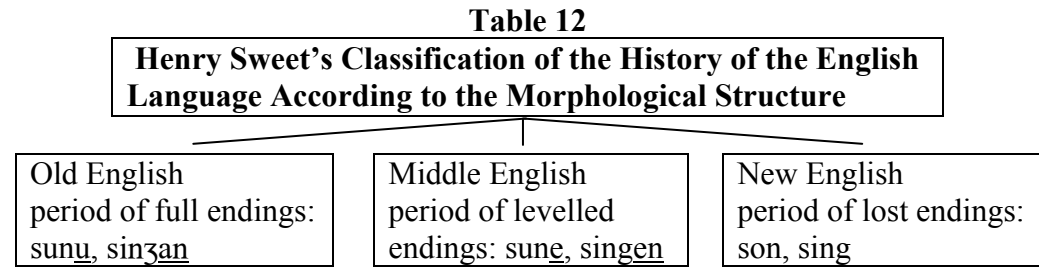
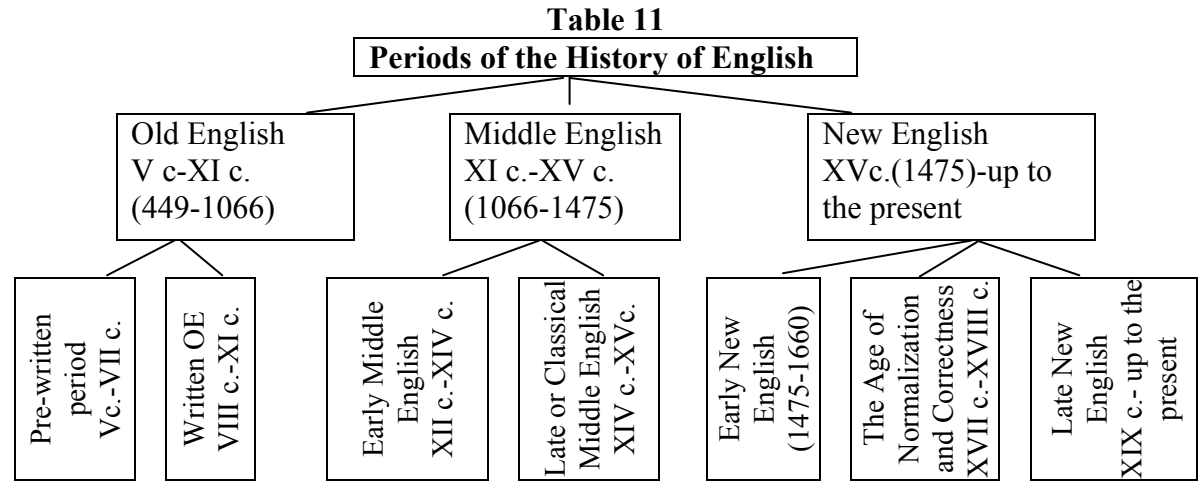
**Table 9 J. Grimm's Law and K.Verner's Law**

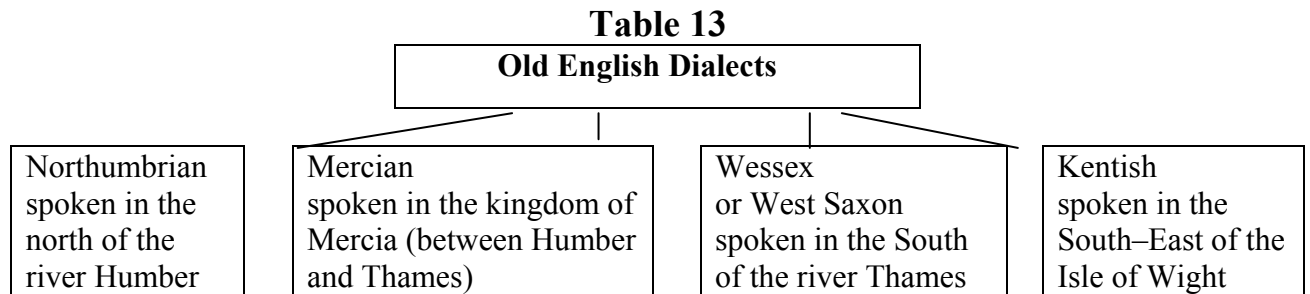
Grimm's law		Verner's law	
IE [t] > Common Germanic; [θ] > [ð] > [d]			
Latin: pater		English: fæder "father" [ˈfaːðə]	
I	II	III	IV
cweðan	cwæð	cwædon	cweden ("say", strong verb V)
Rhotacism [s] > [z] > [r]			
cēosan	cēas	curon	coren ("choose", strong verb II)

13

**Table 10 Old English and Gothic Strong Verbs**

Forms		I	II Past	III Past	IV Past
Class, Language		Infinitive	Tense Sing.	Tense Pl.	Participle
I	Old English	rīsan	rās	rison	risen
	Gothic	reisan	rais	risum	risans
II	Old English	cēosan	cēas	curon	coren
	Gothic	kusan	kaus	kusum	kusans
III	Old English	bindan	band	bundon	bunden
	Gothic	bindan	band	bundum	bundans





























**Table 15. The Old English Runic Alphabet**

There were 24 letters the shape of which is quite peculiar:  
 fuþarc [ˈfuθark] or [ˈfuθork]

							
f fehu wealth	u ūruz aurochs	þ þurisaz giant	a ansuz god	r raipō riding	k kaunaz ulcer	g gebō gift	w wunjō joy
							
h hagalaz hail	n naupiz need/hardship	i isa ice	j jera year/harvest	ī eihwaz yew tree	p perþ luck	z algiz sedge (?)	s sōwulō sun
							
t teiwaz the god Tyr	b berkana birch twig	e ehwaz horse	m mannaz man	l laguz water	ng inguz the god Ing	d ḏagaz day	o ōþila inherited land

**Table 16 Old English Alphabet**

a	m
æ [æ]	n [n],[ŋ]
b	o or a
c [k] or [k']	p
d	r
e	s [s] or [z]
f [f] or [v]	t
Ʒ [g], [g'], [ɣ], [j]	þ [θ] or [ð] shown also as a crossed: ḏ or ḑ
h [x], [x'], [h]	u
i	w
y [y]	x
l	

**Table 17 Old English Vowels**

	Monophthongs 8	Diphthongs 4
Short	i, e, æ, a, o, u, y, ǣ	ea, eo, io, ie
Long	ī, ē, ǣ, ā, ō, ū, ŷ, ŷ̄	ēa, ēo, īo, īe

**Table 18 Old English Vowels**

Monophthongs	Diphthongs
ā – [a:] stān daȝas (stone) (days)	ēo – [eo:] cēosan heorte (choose) (heart)
æ – [æ:] dæd dæȝ (dead) (day)	ēo – [ea:] cēas eald (chose) (old)
ō – [o:] ȝod ȝōd (god) (good)	īe – [ie:] hīeran iermþu (hear) (poverty)
ī – [i:] wriȝan wriȝen (write) (written)	īo – [io:] ȝeþīode hiora (language) (their)

**Table 19 Origin of Old English Vowel Phonemes**

Old English		from Common Germanic
[æ] dæȝ (day)	<	[a] dags
[i] bindan (bind)	<	[i] bindan
[o] coren (chosen)	<	[u] cusans, etc.
[ā] rās	<	[ai] rais
[ēo] cēosan (choose)	<	[iu] kiusan
[ea] cēas (chose)	<	[au] kaus (Gothic)
[ea] eald (old)	<	[a] ald
[eo] heorte (heart)	<	[e] herte

**Table 20 Pronunciation of OE Vowels**

OE	Gothic	Description; Position; Pronunciation	Examples
a [ʌ]	a	Short back vowel; Mainly in open syllables, when the following one contains a back vowel; as in English <i>cup</i>	macian (to make) habban (to have) nama (name)
a [a:]	ai	Long back [a] vowel; In any kind of syllables; as in English <i>star</i>	stān (a stone) hātan (to call) hām (home)
æ [æ]	a	Short front vowel; Met mainly in closed syllables, or in open ones, if the next syllable contains a front vowel; as in English <i>bad</i>	dæʒ (a day) wæter (water) blæc (black)
æ [æ]	é, á	Long front vowel; as Gothic é found only in some verbal forms, as Gothic á is the result of the so-called <i>i</i> -mutation;	stælon (stolen) háelan (to cure)
e [e]	i, ai, a	Short front vowel; as Gothic i, ai noticed only in some infinitives, otherwise is result of the mutation of i; as in English <i>bed</i>	ic ete (I eat) cēpan (to keep)
ē [e:]	ó	Long front [e] vowel; resulted from the <i>i</i> -mutation of ó; as in German <i>meer</i>	dēman (to judge) hē (he)
i [i]	i, ie	Short front vowel; can be either stable or unstable sound can interchange with ie and y; as in English <i>still</i>	bindan (to bind) niht-nyht (a night)
ī	ie	Long front [i] vowel; also	wrītan (to write)

[i:]		stable and unstable (mutating to <i>ý</i> ); as in English <i>steal</i>	hīe (they)
o [ɔ]	u, au	Short back vowel; as in English <i>cost</i>	coren (chosen)
ō [o:]	o	Long back vowel [o:]; as in English <i>store</i>	mōna (moon)
u [u]	u, au	Short back vowel; used only when the next syllable contains another back vowel; as in English <i>book</i>	curon (they chose) sunu (son)
ū [u:]	ú	Long back [u] vowel; as in English <i>stool</i>	nū (now)
y [y]	u	Short front vowel; i-mutation of u; as in German <i>fünf</i>	zylden (golden) fyllan (to fill)
ÿ [y:]	ú	Long front [y] vowel; i-mutation of ū,	mÿs (mice)

**Table 21 Classification of OE Vowels**

Front		Back
Unround	Round	
High i i	ū: ü	u u
Mid e e		o: o
Low æ: æ		o a: a

**Table 22 Syllable Types in Old English**

Short-stemmed monosyllables	bæc (back) feoh (cattle)
Long-stemmed monosyllables	stān (stone) cnīht (knight)
Short-stemmed dissyllables (a “-” separates the two syllables)	micel (much) yfel (evil)
Long-stemmed dissyllables (a “-” separates the two syllables)	ēfen (even) enʒel (angel)
Open syllables (stā-is an open syllable; -nes is a closed syllable)	hē (he) stānes (stone)
Closed syllables	stān (stone) limpan (to limp)

**Table 23 Changes of Old English Vowel Phonemes.  
Independent Changes**

a)

Common Germanic	Old English
ai Goth. stains >	ā stān “stone” æ þær “there”
a OHG dar >	ō mōna “moon”
a OHG mano >	

b) Ablaut (Vowel Gradation)

ī – ā – i - i	rīdan “to ride” - rād (pret.sg.) – ridon (pret.pl.)- riden writan “to write” – wrāt – writon - writen
ēo – ēa – u - u (o)	bēodan “to bid” – bēad – budon – buden (past part.) ceosan “to choose”- ceas – curon – coren
e (i, eo) – a (e, ea)-	binden “to bind” – band – bundon -

u (o)	bonden ceorfan “to carve” – cearf – curfon – corfen
a – ō	as in faran “to go, travel” fōr – fōren

**Table 24 Dependent Changes of OE Vowels**

**a) Breaking**

æ > ea	before r+consonant l+ consonant h+consonant h final	ærm > earm (arm) æld > eald (old) æhta > eahta (eight) sæh > seah (saw)
e > eo	before r+ consonant l+ consonant h final	herte > heorte (heart) melcan > meolcan (to milk) selh > seolh (seal) feh > feoh (cattle)

**b) Palatal Mutation (Umlaut). Monophthongs**

a > e	as in menn, plural of mann “man”
u > y	as fyllan “to fill” < fullian, cf. Gothic fulljan and the OE adjective full
ū > y̆	mūs “mouse”-mȳs “mice” < mūsiz fūl “foul”, fȳlþ “filth”
ō > ē	fōt “foot”, fēt “feet” < fōtiz bōc “book”, bēc “books”
æ > e	tælian > tellan “to tell”
ā > æ	hālian > hælān “to heal”
o > e	ofstian > efstān “to hurry”

**c) Palatal Mutation. Diphthongs**

ea > ie	ealdira > ieldra (elder)
ēa > iē	zēlēafian > zeliēfan (to believe)
eo > ie	afeorrian > afierran (to remove)
ēo > iē	zetrēow > zetriewe (true)

**d) Effect of Palatal Mutation upon Grammar and Wordstock**

Adjective ful (full)	-	Verb fyllan (fill)
Noun dōm (doom)	-	Verb dēman (deem)
Verb sittan (sit)	-	Verb settan (set)

**e) Palatalization of OE Vowels**

Vowels	Palatalization	Positional Marker (preceded by)
æ	ea	ʒ [j] gæt > ʒeat (gate)
e	ie	ʒ [j] gefan > ʒiefan (give)
o	eo	c [k'] sk [sk'] scort > sceort (short)

**f) Lengthening of Vowels**

The first lengthening of vowels took place as early as late Old English (IX century). All vowels which occurred before the combinations such as "mb, nd, ld" became long.

Periods Sounds	Old English	Middle English	New English
[i] > [i:] > [ai]	bindan findan cild > child wild climban	binden ['bi:ndən] finden ['fi:ndən] child [tʃi:ld] wild [wi:ld] climben ['kli:mbən]	bind [ai] find [ai] child [ai] wild [ai] climb [ai]
[u] > [u:] > [au]	bundon fundon	bounden ['bu:ndən] founden ['fu:ndən]	bound [au] found [au]

[u] > ū [u:] > [au]	hund [ hund]	hound ['hu:nd]	hound[au]
[a] > ā [a:] > [ei]	talū [ talu]	tale ['ta:lə]	tale[ei]
[e] > ē [e:] > [i:]	sprecan ['sprekan]	spreken ['sprekən]	speak [ei]
[o] > ō [ɔ:] > [ou]	hopian ['hopian]	hopen ['hɔ:pən]	hope [ou]

**Table 25 Metathesis in Old English**

ro > or	hros > hors “horse”
ir > ri	irnnan > rinnan “run”
ri > ir	þrida > þirdda “third”
ry > yr	bryd > byrd “bird”
hw > wh	hwā > who

**Table 26 OE Diphthongs**

The OE diphthongs are pronounced with the stress on the first element. Their origin is complicated and is in most cases the result of breaking, mutation or palatalization.

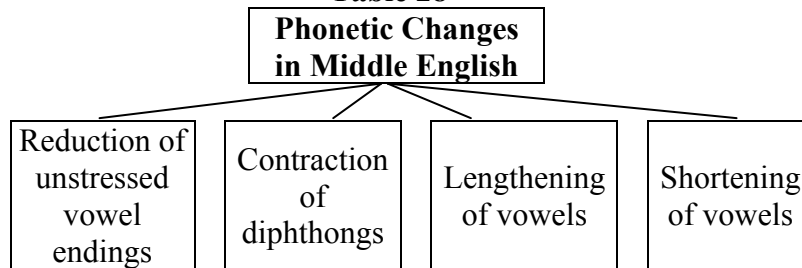
ea	as in eall	“all”
ēa	eahta	“eight”
	ēa	“stream, river”
	bēam	“beam, tree”
ie	ieldra	“older”
	iermþu	“poverty”
īe	hīeran	“to hear”
	zeliēfan	“to believe”
eo	feor	“far”
	heorte	“heart”
ēo	cēosan	“to choose”
	leod	“people”
io	siolfor	“silver”
	silfon	“seven”
īo	līof	“dear”
	dīop	“deep”



**Table 27 Development of Long Monophthongs**

Periods Sounds	Old English	Middle English	Meaning
ā > ō [ɔ:]	stān bāt	stōn bōt	stone boat
æ > ē [e:]	slæpan	slēpen	sleep
ȳ > ī [i:]	fȳr	fīr	fire
ē [e:]	tēþ	teeth	teeth
ō [ɔ:]	tōþ	tooth	tooth
ū [u:]	ūt	out	out
ī [i:]	tīma	time	time

**Table 28**



**Table 29 Development of OE Vowels in Middle English**

Old English	Middle English
þæt	that
wæs	was
fyrst	first
tellan	tellen
hors	hors
sinzan	singen
putan	putten

**Table 30 Changes of OE Diphthongs**

All Old English diphthongs were contracted (became monophthongs) at the end of the Old English period.

Periods Sounds	Old English	Middle English
ēo > ee [e:]	dēop	deep
ēa > ea [e:]	brēad	bread
ea > a [a]	eald	ald “old”
eo > e [e]	seofon	seven

**Table 31 Diphthongization of Monophthongs**

Old English	Middle English	Meaning
dæʒ > daʒ	> dai	day
weʒ > weʒ	> wei	way
grēʒ > greʒ	> grei	grey
draʒan > drawen	> drauen	draw
āʒan > owen	> ouen	own
boʒa > bowe	> boue	bow

**Table 32 Monophthongization in IX-X cc.**

Vowel Changes	Examples
[ɛa] > [æ] > [a]	eal > æll > all wearm > wærm > warm
[eo] > [e]	heorte > herte > heart
[ɛa:] > [ɛ:]	brēad > bread
[eo:] > [e:]	dēop > deep

**Table 33**  
**Changes of Root-vowels in Open Syllables (XIII c.)**

Vowel	Vowel Changes	Examples
a	> ā	name – nāme (name)
e	> ē	mete – mēte (meet)
o	> ō	þrote – thrōte (throat)
i	> ē	wice – wēke (week)
u	> ō	duru – dōre (door)

**Table 34**  
**Phonetic Changes in Past Tense Endings**  
**of Weak Verbs**

Phonetic conditions	Middle English	Meaning
After a voiced consonant or a vowel	deemde ['de:mdə] > [di:md] pleyede ['pleiədə] > [pleid]	deemed played
After a voiceless consonant	lookede ['lo:kədə] > ['lu:kəd] > [lukt]	looked
After [t] or [d]	wantede ['wantədə] > ['wəntid]	wanted

**Table 35 Shortening of Vowels**  
 All long vowels were shortened in Middle English  
 if they occurred before two consonants (XI c.)

Old English	Middle English	Meaning
cēpte wīsdōm	cepte wisdom	kept wisdom

**Table 36 Vowels in an Unstressed Position**

Vowels in an unstressed position were reduced in Middle English to the vowel of the [ə] type which dropped in New English.

Old English	Middle English	Meaning
nama	name ['na:mə]	name [neim]
wrītan	writen ['wri:tən]	write [rait]
sunu	son [su:nə]	son [sʌn]

**Table 37 Spelling of Long Vowels in Middle English**

OE	ME		Meaning
	Spelling	Pronunciation	
hūs	hous	[hu:s]	house
mūs	mous	[mu:s]	mouse
hū	how	[hu:]	who
nū	now	[nu:]	now
tūn	town	[tu:n]	town

**Table 38 Changes in the Vowel System**

OE	ME	Examples
[æ]	[a]	þæt > that “that”
[ā]	[ō]	rās > ros “rose”
[æ]	[ē]	mæðro > mērðe “greatness”
[ǣ]	[ē]	sǣ > sē “sea”

**Table 39 Changes in Short Vowels**

XIV c.	XVI c.
cat [kat] >	[kæt]
land [land] >	[lænd]
sat [sat] >	[sæt]

**Table 40 Shortening of Long Vowels**

XV c.	XVI c.
deed [dɛ:d]	dead [ded]
breed [brɛ:d]	bread [bred]
heed [hɛ:d]	head [hed]
breeth [brɛ:θ]	breath [breθ]

**Table 41 Changes in Short Vowels**

XV c.	XVII c.
run [run]	[rʌn]
come [kum]	[kʌm]
young [juŋ]	[jʌŋ]
was [was]	[wɔz]
want [want]	[wɔnt]
watch [watʃ]	[wɔtʃ]

**Table 42 Shortening of Long Vowels**

XV c.	XVI c.	XVII c.	XVII-XVIII c.
blood [blo:d]	[blu:d]	[blud]	[blʌd]
flood [flo:d]	[flu:d]	[flud]	[flʌd]
mother ['mo:ðər]	['mu:ðər]	['muðər]	['mʌðər]
brother ['bro:ðər]	['bruðər]	['bruðər]	['brʌðər]
glove [glo:v]	[glu:v]	[gluv]	[glʌv]
doon [do:n], done	[du:n]	[dun]	[dʌn]

**Table 43 Formation of the Neutral Vowel in Unstressed Syllables**

OE	ME	NE
stānas	stones [ɔ̄stɔ:nəs]	stones
daȝas	daies, dayes, days [ɔ̄daɪəs]	days
earlas	erles – earls [ɔ̄erləs]	earls

**Table 44 Qualitative Changes**

**a) Changes of Monophthongs**

All long monophthongs in New English (XV-XVII century) underwent a change that is called The Great Vowel Shift.

Due to this change the vowels became narrower and more front.

Periods Sounds	Middle English	New English
[ā] > [eɪ]	make	make
[ē] > [i:]	see	see
[ō] > [ou]	ston	stone
[ū] > [u:]	moon roote	moon root

**b) Influence of the Consonant “r” upon Great Vowel Shift**

[eɪ] but [ɛə]	fate, but fare
[i:] but [iə]	steep, but steer
[aɪ] but [aiə]	time, but tire
[u:] but [uə]	moon, but moor
[au] but [auə]	house, but hour

**c) vowels**

Vowels	The sound existed before the Great Vowel Shift	The sound appeared after the Great Vowel Shift
[eɪ]	wey	make
[u:]	hous	moon
[i:]	time	see

**d) Two short monophthongs changed their quality in New English (XVII c.)**

Periods Sounds	Middle English	New English
[a] > [æ]	that	that
[u] > [ʌ]	cut	cut

**e) When the sound [a] was preceded by [w] it changed into [ɔ]**

Periods Sounds	Middle English	New English
[a] > [æ]	that	that
[a] > [ɔ]	was	was (but: wax [wæks] ).

Periods Sounds	Middle English	New English
[u] > [ʌ]	but [but]	but [bʌt]

**f) Changes of Diphthongs**

Periods Sounds	Middle English	New English
[ai] > [ei]	dai	day
[au] > [ɔ:]	lawe	law

**g) The Development of ME Diphthongs**

XIIIc.	XVc.	XVIc.
blue [bliu:] >	[blju] >	[blu:]
fruit [fry:t] >	[frju:t] >	[fru:t]
chew [tʃiu] >	[tʃju:] >	[tʃu:]
june [dʒy:n] >	[dʒju:n] >	[dʒu:n]

### h) The Development of ME Diphthongs

End of XIVc.	XVc.	XVIc.
knew [kniu] >	[knju] >	[nju:]
new [niu] >	[nju] >	[nju]
fewe > few [fiu] >	[fju] >	[fju:]
dew [diu] >	[dju:] >	[dju:]
duke [dy:kə] >	[dju:k] >	[dju:k]
use ['y:zə] >	[ju:z] >	[ju:z]

### i) The Development of ME Diphthongs

XIV-XVcc.	XV-XVIcc.	XVIIIc.
snow [snou] >	[sno:] >	[snou]
low [lou] >	[lo:] >	[lou]
know [knou] >	[kno:] >	[nou]

### j) The Development of ME Diphthongs

XIIIc.	XIVc.	XVc.	XV-XVIcc.	NE
dai	day			
[dai] >	[dæi] >	[dæ:] >	[dɛ:] > [de:] > [dei]	day
wey	way			
[wei] >	[wæi] >	[wæ:] >	[wɛ:] > [we:] > [wei]	way



**k) Lengthening of Short Vowels in Open Syllables**

[a] > [a:]	nama > caru > baðian >	ME name (XIc.) > ME care (XII c.) > ME bathen (XIIIc.) >	name ['na:mə] (XIIIc.) care ['ka:rə] (XIII c.) bathen ['ba:ðən] (XIIIc.)
[e] > [ɛ:]	sprecan > mete > beran >	ME speken (XIIIc.) > ME mete (XIIIc.) > ME beren (XIc.) >	spoken ['spɛ:kən] (XIIIc.) mete ['mɛ:tə] (XIIIc.) “meat” beren ['bɛ:rən] (XIIIc.) “to bear”
[o] > [o:]	nosu > hopa >	ME nose (XIc.) > ME hope (XIc.) >	nose ['no:zə] (XIIIc.) hope ['ho:pə] (XIIIc.)

**Table 45 Substitution of the Letter “u” by “o” in ME before the so-called Stick Consonants**

The letters following “u”	Old English		Middle English		New English	
	Spelling	Pronunciation	Spelling	Pronunciation	Spelling	Pronunciation
m	cumon sum	['kumən] [sum]	comen some	['kumən] [sum]	come some	[kʌm] [sʌm]
n	sunu wundor	['sunu] ['wundor]	sone wonder	['sunə] ['wundər]	son wonder	['sʌn] ['wʌndə]
v	a-bufan	[ə'buvan]	aboven	[ə'buvan]	above	[ə'baʊv]

**Table 46 Development of Vowels during The Great Vowel Shift**

a)

year 1400	XVc.	1500	XVI c.	1600	XVIIc	1700	XVIIIc	1800c.
i: →	ei →→	→→→	→→æi	→→	→ai	-----	-----	-----ai
u: →	ou →→	→→→	→→au	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----au
e: →	i: -----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----i:
ɛ: →	→→	→→→	→→→	→→	→→	→→	----i:--	-----i:
a: →	æ: →→	→ɛ: →	→→e:	→→	→→	→→	→ei--	-----ei
o: →	→→→	→→→	→→e:	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----u:
o: →	→→→	u: -----	-----	→o:	-----	-----	→ou	-----ou

Marks: → changed; ---- remained

33

b)

XV-XVI cc.	
ee [i:] < OE ē	OE dēop > ME deep > XVI c. deep > [di:p]
ea [e:] < OE ē	OE dǣlan > ME deelen > XVI c. deal [de:l]

c)

XIVc.	XVc.	XVIc
town [tu:n] >	[toun] >	[taun]
out [u:t] >	[out] >	[aut]
fowl [fu:l] >	[foul] >	[faul]

d)

end of XIV c.	XV c.	XVI c.
se [se:]	sea [se:]	[si:]
ete ['e:tə]	eat [e:t]	[i:t]
mete ['mɛ:tə]	[me:t]	[mi:t]

e)

end of XIVc.	XIVc.	XVc.	XVIc.	XVIIIc.
take [ta:k] >	[tæ:k] >	[te:k] >	[te:k] >	[teik]
shake [ʃa:k] >	[ʃæ:k] >	[ʃɛ:k] >	[ʃe:k] >	[ʃeik]
age [a: dʒ] >	[æ dʒ] >	[ɛ:dʒ] >	[e:dʒ] >	[eidʒ]

f)

end of XIV c.	XVI c.
roof [ro:f] >	[ru:f]
cool [ko:l] >	[ku:l]
tooth [to:θ] >	[tu:θ]

g)

end of XIVc.	XVI-XVIIcc.	XVIIIc.
rood [ro:d] >	road [ro:d] >	[roud]
ston [sto:n] >	stone [sto:n] >	[stoun]
ook [o:k] >	oak[o:k] >	[ouk]

h)

end of XIVc.	XVc.
we [we:] >	we [wi:]
feele [fe:l] >	feel [fi:l]
sheep [ʃe:p] >	sheep [ʃi:p]

**Table 47 Growth of Enclosed Sounds**

XIVc.	XV-XVI cc.	New English
morwe ['morwə] > sparwe ['sparwə] > narwe ['narwə] >	morrow ['morou] sparrow ['spærou] narrow ['nærou]	morning sparrow narrow

**Table 48 Shortening of Vowels**

a)

XIV c.	XVI c.	XVIIIc.	New English
reden ['rɛ:dən] > beten ['bɛ:tən] > heeth [hɛ:θ] >	read [rɛ:d] > beat [bɛ:t] > heoth [hɛ:θ] >	[ri:d] [bi:t] [hi:θ]	read beat heath

b)

XIV c.	XV-XVI cc.	XVII-XVIII cc.	New English
book [bo:k] > shook [ʃo:k] > foot [fo:t] > stood [sto:d] >	[bu:k] > [ʃu:k] > [fu:t] > [stu:d] >	[buk] [ʃuk] [fut] [stud]	book shook foot stood

**Table 49 Emergence of Long Vowels**

a)

XIV-XV cc.	XVIIc. I half	XVIIIc.
fur [fur] > turn [turn] > journey ['dʒurnei] > worm [wurm] >	[fʌr] > [tʌrn] > ['dʒʌrni] > [wʌrm]	[fə:] [tə:n] ['dʒə:ni] [wə:m]

**b)**

XIV c.	XV – XVII cc.	XVIII c.	XVIIIc.
vertu [ver'tu] >	['vartju] >	['vertju] >	['və:tju:] virtue
service [ser'vis] >	['sarvus] >	['servis] >	['sə:vis] service
certain [ser'tain] >	['sartən] >	['sertən] >	['sə:tn] certain

**c)**

XIV c.	XV c.	XVI – XVIII cc.
hall >	[haul] >	[hɔ:l] hall
all >	[aul] >	[ɔ:l] all
talk(e) >	[taulk] > [tauk] >	[tɔ:k] talk
walk(e) >	[wauk] > [wauk] >	[wɔ:k] walk
salt >	[sault] >	[sɔ:lt] salt

**d)**

XIII c.	XIV c.	XV c.	XVI c.
thoughte ['θoxtə] >	thoughte ['θoxtə] >	thought [θaut] >	[θɔ:t]
broughte ['broxtə] >	broughte ['brouxtə] >	brought ['braut] >	[brɔ:t]
boughte ['boxtə] >	boughte ['bouxtə] >	bought ['baut] >	[bɔ:t]

**e)**

ME	NE
branch [brantʃ] >	[bra:ntʃ]
plant [plant] >	[pla:nt]
command [kə'mand] >	[kə'ma:nd]
example [ig'zɑmpl] >	[ig'za:mpl]

f)

XIV c.	XV c.	XVI c.
calm [kaulm] >	[kaum] >	[ka:m]
balm [baulm] >	[baum] >	[ba:m]
half [haulf] >	[hauf] >	[ha:f]
calf [kaulf] >	[kauf] >	[ka:f]

g)

XV c.	XVI-XVII cc.
cause [kaus] >	[ko:z]
draw [drau] >	[dro:]
law [lau] >	[lo:]

h)

XIV c.	XVI c.
port [port] >	[po:t]
ford [ford] >	[fo:d]

i)

XIV c.	XV c.	XVI-XVIII cc.I half	XVIIIc.
half [haf] >	[hæf] >	[hæ:f] >	[ha:f]
calf [kaf] >	[kæf] >	[kæ:f] >	[ka:f]

j)

XIV-XVII cc.	XVIII c.
first [first] >	[fə:st]
fir [fir] >	[fə:]
bird [bird] >	[bɜ:d]

k)

serve	[er] →→ [ar] →→ [er] →→ [ə:]
burn	[ur] →→ [ʌr] →→ [ə:] →→ [ə:]
girl	[ir] →→→→→ [ir] →→ [ə:]

l)

XV c.	XVI-XVIII cc. I half	XVIII c. II half
pass [pæs] >	[pæ:s] >	[pa:s]
glass [glæs] >	[glæ:s] >	[glɑ:s]
after ['æftər ]>	['æ:ftər] >	['ɑ:ftə]
craft [kræft] >	[kræ:ft] >	[kra:ft]
path [pæθ] >	[pæ:θ] >	[pa:θ]
hard [hærd] >	[hæ:d] >	[ha:d]

**Table 50**  
**Spelling of Long Vowels in Middle English**

OE	ME		Meaning
hūs	hous	[hu:s]	house
mūs	mous	[mu:s]	mouse
hū	how	[hu:]	who
nū	now	[nu:]	now
tūn	town	[tu:n]	town





**Table 51 Changes of Short Vowels**

XIVc.	XVc.
werre >	war [war]
sterre >	star [sta:r]
person >	person ['pʌrsən]
ferre >	far [fa:r]

**Table 52  
Vocalization of “r” and Associated Vowel Changes**

Periods	Changes Illustrated		Examples	
	ME	NE	ME	NE
After short vowels	o+r	[ɔ:]	for [for] thorn [θorn]	for thorn
	a+r	[a:]	bar [bar] dark [dark]	bar dark
	i+r	} [ə:]	first [first]	first
	e+r		serven ['servən]	serve
u+r	fur [fur]		fur	
	o+r		brother ['brʊðər]	brother

After long vowels	i:+r	[aiə]	shire ['ʃi:rə]	shire
	e:+r	[iə]	beer [be:r]	beer
	ɛ:+r	[iə]	ere ['ɛ:r (ə)]	ear
	ɛ:+r	[ɛə]	there ['θɛ:r(ə)]	there
			beren ['berən]	bear
	a:+r	[ɛə]	hare ['ha:rə]	hare
	o:+r	[oə][o:]	floor [flo:r]	floor
	o:+r	[uə]	moor [mo:r]	moor
u:+r	[auə]	flour [flu:r]	flower	

**Table 53**  
**Phonetic Changes in the Development of Weak Verbs**

	Infinitive	Past Tense	Past Participle
XII c.	kepen [ɛ:]	kepte [ɛ:]	kept [ɛ:]
XIII c	kepen [e:]	kepte [e]	kept [e]
XV c.	keep [i:]	kept [e]	kept [e]

**Table 54 Pronunciation of Strong Verbs in their Development in New English**

Infinitive	Past Tense		Past Participle
	Singular	Plural	
[o:] > [u:]	[ou]	[ou]	[o:] > [ou]
to choose	chose	chose	chosen
[o:] > [u:]	[o]	[o]	[o]
to shoot	shot	shot	shot
[e:] > [i:]	[ou]	[ou]	[ou]
to freeze	froze	froze	frozen
[i]	[a] >	[æ]	[u] > [ʌ]
to begin	began		begun
to drink	drank		drunk
to sing	sang		sung
to ring	rang		rung
to swim	swam		swum
to shrink	shrank		shrunken
[i]	[u] > [ʌ]		[u] > [ʌ]
to cling	clung		clung
to fling	flung		flung
to win	won		won

[i:] > [ai]	[u:] > [au]	[u:] > [au]
to bind to find to grind to wind	bound found ground wound	bound found ground wound
[i:] or [ɛə]	[ou] or [o:]	[ou] or [ɔ:]
to steal to speak to break to bear to tear	stole spoke broke bore tore	stolen spoken broken bor(e)n torn
[i] or [i:]	[ei] or [e]	[I] or [i:]
to give to eat	gave ate [et]	given eaten
[I]	[æ]	[æ]
to sit	sat sat	sat
[a:] > [ei]	[o:] > [u]	[a:] > [ei]
to shake to take to forsake	shook took forsook	shaken taken forsaken

**Table 55 Old English Consonant Letters**

p, b, m, f, t, d, n, s, r, l, þ, ð, c, ȝ, h

**Table 56 Pronunciation of OE Consonant Letters**

The Old English spelling was mainly phonetic, the letters “f, s, þ, ð” could denote voiced consonants in intervocal position or voiceless otherwise; the letter “c” was used to denote the sound [k] (palatal or velar).

3	[j] – before or after front vowels [æ], [e], [i]: ȝiefan (give), ȝēar (year), dæȝ (day)
	[ɣ] – after back vowels [a], [o], [u] and consonants [l] and [r] dɑȝas (days), folȝian (follow)
	[g] – before consonants and before back vowels [a], [o], [u]: ȝōd (good), ȝlēo (glee)

**Table 57 Classification of Old English Consonants**

Place of articulation / Manner of articulation	Labial, labio-dental	Fore-lingual (dental)	Medio-lingual (palatal)	Back – lingual (velar)
<b>Plosive</b>				
voiceless	p p:	t t:	k' k:	k k:
voiced	b b:	d d:	g:	g g
<b>Fricative</b>				
voiceless	f f:	θ θ: s s:	x' x':	x' x: (h)
voiced	v	ð z		ɣ
<b>Sonorants</b>	m m:	n n: r l		(ŋ)
<b>Semivowel</b>	w		y (j)	

**Table 58 Palatalization and Splitting  
of OE Velar Consonants**

Change illustrated		Examples	
Before and after front vowels	In other positions	OE	NE
k k'		cinn, birce, tæcan	chin, birch, to teach
	k	can, macian	can, to make
g g'		sinzan	to sing
g: g':		ec3, bryc3	edge, bridge,
	g	3ān, 3rētan	go, to greet
		neaht, niht	night
x x'	x, h	hors, hlāf	horse, loaf
γ j	γ	dæ3, 3eard da3as	day, yard days

**Table 59  
Voiced Positional Variants of OE Voiceless Consonants**

	OE	Meaning	OE	Meaning
[f]>[v]	feohtan [ˈfeoxtan] oft [oft]	“fight” “often”	drefan [ˈdre:van] ofer [ˈover]	“drive” “over”
[s]>[z]	rās [ra:s] 3āst [ga:st]	“rose” “ghost”	rīsan [ˈri:zan] wesān [ˈwezan]	“rise” “be”
[θ]>[ð]	ðæt [θæt]	“that”	ōðer [ˈo:ðer] cweðan [kweðən]	“other” “say”, “quote”

**Table 60 Contraction of Nasal Consonants in OE**

OE	Meaning
fif < finf (Goth. finf, fimf)	five
sōfte < sonfto (OHG. samfto)	soft
ōðer < onþer (Goth. anþar)	other
tōþ < tonþ (Goth. tunþus)	tooth
zōs < zons (OHG. gans)	goose
ūs < uns (OHG. uns)	us

**Table 61 Palatalization of OE Backlingual Consonants**

IX c.	XI c.	XII c.
OE [sk'] > ME [ʃ]		scip > ship; scēap > sheep
OE [k'] > ME [tʃ]		cild > child; cin > chin
OE [gg'] > ME [dʒ]		brycz > bridge (brigge)
		ecz > edge

**Table 62 Vocalization of Consonants in ME**

Old English	Middle English	Meaning
3 [ɣ] bōza	bowe [ou]	bow
drazan	drawen [au]	draw
[j] dæz	day [ai]	day
wez	wey [ei]	way

**Table 63 Emergence of New Consonants in ME from the Old English Variants**

Old English	Middle English	Meaning
seofon	seven [v]	seven
rīsan	risen [z]	risen
hæðen	hethen [ð]	heathen

**Table 64 Spelling Changes of Some Consonants in ME**

Old English	Middle English
sc [sk'] scip	sh ship
c[k'] cin	ch chin
c3 [gg'] ec3	dg edge
c [k] cyn	k kin
f [v] fif	v five
þ [θ], [ð] þæt	th that
h [x, x'] liht	gh light
3 [g] 3ōn	g gon

**Table 65 Simplification of Initial Consonants in ME**

Old English	Middle English
VIII c.	XI c.
hring	ring “ring”
hnutu	nute “nut”
hlūd	lud “loud”
hwæt	what
hwit	whit “white”

**Table 66 Simplification of Initial Consonants in NE**

Middle English	New English
gnat [gnat]	gnat [næt]
gnome [gno:m]	gnome [noum]
wrappen [wrapən]	wrap [ræp]
writen [wri:tən]	write [rait]
wrong [wron]	wrong [rɒŋ]



**Table 67 Simplification of Consonants in New English**

Middle English		New English
[st]	>	[sl]
bustlen ['bustlən]		bustle ['bʌsl]
whistlen ['hwistlən]		whistle ['wisl]
[stn]	>	['sn]
fastnen ['fastnən]		fasten ['fa:sn]
listnen ['listnən]		listen ['lisn]
[skl]	>	[sl]
muscle ['muskl]		muscle ['mʌsl]
[ftn]	>	[fn]
often ['oftn]		often ['ɔfn]
[mb]	>	[m]
climbin ['kli:mbən]		climb ['klaɪm]
lamb [lamb]		lamb [læm]
[mn]	>	[m]
automne [o:'tumn]		autumn ['ɔ:təm]
solemn ['solemn]		solemn ['sɒləm]
[kn]	>	[n]
knave [kna:v]		knave ['neiv]
kneden ['knɛ:dən]		knead [ni:d]
knyf ['kni:f]		knife [naɪf]
knowen ['knouən]		know [nou]

**Table 68 Changes of Sibilant and Affricate Consonants after Stressed Syllables in XVII-XVIII cc.**

[sj] > [ʃ]	commissioun [komi 'sju:n] > commission [kə'misjən] > [kə'miʃn] commission relation [rela'sju:n] > [ri'leisjən] > [ri'leiʃn] relation
[zj] > [ʒ]	decision [desi'zju:n] > [di'sizjən] > [di'siʒn] decision plesure [ple'zju:rə] > ['plezjə] > ['pleʒə] pleasure
[tj] > [tʃ]	nature [na'tju:rə] > ['neitjə] > ['neitʃə] nature
[dj] > [dʒ]	souldier [soul'djer] > ['souldjə] > ['souldʒə] soldier

**Table 69 Vocalization of the Consonant [r] in New English**

XVI c.		XVII-XVIII c.
bark [bark]	>	[ba:k]
harm [harm]	>	[ha:m]
turn [turn]	>	[tə:n]
port [port]	>	[pɔ:t]
care [kæ:r]	>	[kæə]
here [hi:r]	>	[hiə]

**Table 70 Development of Sibilants or Fricatives in the Plural Ending of Nouns in New English**

Phonetic conditions	ME	NE
After a voiced consonant or a vowel	stones ['sto:nəs] > ['stounəz] > ['stounz] days [dais] > [deis]	stones days
After a voiceless consonant	bookes ['bo:kəs] > [bu:ks] > [buks]	books
After sibilants and affricates [s, z, ʃ, tʃ, dʒ]	dishes ['diʃəs] > ['diʃiz]	dishes

**Table 71 Changes in the Alphabet and Spelling in Middle and New English****a) The following letters disappeared and replaced by**

ð, þ [ð/θ]	th	þat – that
ȝ [g/j]	g y	ȝod – god dæȝ – day
æ [eə]	e	ȝear – year

**b) The following letters were introduced**

g	for [g],[dʒ] in “god” and [dʒ] in “age”
j	for [dʒ] in words of French origin: “joy, judge”
k	for [k] instead of “c” before front vowels and “n”: drinca[n] > drinke[n]; cnawa[n] > knowe[n];

v	for [v]	instead of f as a separate phoneme: lufu > love ['lʊvə]
q	for [k] or [kw]	(followed by u) in quay [ki:] in “cwen > queen” to replace OE “cw”
z	for [z]	as a separate phoneme: zēl (zeal)

**c) The following digraphs appeared:**

Consonant digraphs			
ch	for the sound	[tʃ]	cild > child
dʒ		[dʒ]	brycʒ > bridge
gh		[χ]	riht > right
th		[ð/θ]	þencan > thinken, moðor > mother
sh		[ʃ]	scip > ship
ph		[f]	in words borrowed from Latin: phonetics
ch		[k]	in words borrowed from Latin: chemistry
vowel digraphs – to show the length of the vowel			
ea	[e:]	mēte > meat	
ee	[e:]	fēt > feet	
oa	[o:]	bāt > boat	
oo	[o:]	fōt > foot	
ie	[e:]	fēld > field	
ou/ow	[u:]	hūs > hous, tūn > town	

**Table 72 Addition of Consonants in New English**

Consonants	ME	NE
final “d”	soun (<Fr. son, soun) boun expoune	> sound  > bound > expound
final “t”	egens amonges (Fr.) paysan	> against > amongst > peasant

	(Fr.) tyran	> tyrant
initial “h”	(h)oost (h)omage	> hoost > homage
insertion of “n”	passage message porridge herbergene	> passenger > messenger > porringer > harbinger

## MORPHOLOGY

**Table 73 Number of OE Nouns**

Nominative Singular	Nominative Plural
fisc “fish”, stān “stone” scip “ship”, land “land” scēap “sheep” ēaze “eye”, oxa “ox” broðor “brother” tōþ “tooth”, mann “man”	fīscas “fishes”, stānas “stones” scipu “ships”, landu “lands” sceap “sheep” ēazan “eyes”, oxan “oxen” brōðor “brethren, brothers” tēþ “teeth”, men(n) “men”

**Table 74 Declension of OE a-stem Nouns (Strong Declension)**

Gender		Masculine	Neuter	
			Short vowel	Long vowel
Singular	Nominative	fisc “fish”	scip	dēor
	Genitive	fisc <u>e</u> s	“ship”	“deer”
	Dative	fisc <u>e</u>	scip <u>e</u> s	dēor <u>e</u> s
	Accusative	fisc	scip <u>e</u>	dēor <u>e</u>
Plural	Nominative	fisc <u>a</u> s	scip <u>u</u>	dēor
	Genitive	fisc <u>a</u>	scip <u>a</u>	dēor <u>a</u>
	Dative	fisc <u>u</u> m	scip <u>u</u> m	dēor <u>u</u> m
	Accusative	fisc <u>a</u> s	scip <u>u</u>	dēor

**Table 75**  
**Declension of OE  $\bar{o}$ -stem Nouns (Strong Declension)**

o-stem	Singular	jo-stem
Masculine		
N. car <u>u</u> "care"		bryc <u>3</u> "bridge"
G.		
D. } care <u></u>		} bryc <u>3e</u>
A.		
Plural		
N. car <u>a</u>		bryc <u>3a</u>
G. car <u>a</u>		bryc <u>3a</u>
D. car <u>um</u>		bryc <u>3um</u>
A. car <u>a</u>		bryc <u>3a</u>

**Table 76**  
**Declension of OE i-stem Nouns**  
**(Strong Declension)**

Singular		
Masc.	Neuter	Fem.
N. siz <u>e</u> "victory"	sif <u>e</u> "sieve"	h <u>yd</u> "hide"
G. siz <u>es</u>	sif <u>es</u>	h <u>yd</u> <u>e</u>
D. siz <u>e</u>	sif <u>e</u>	h <u>yd</u> <u>e</u>
A. siz <u>e</u>	sif <u>e</u>	h <u>yd</u> <u>e</u>
Plural		
N. siz <u>e</u> , siz <u>ea</u> s	sif <u>u</u>	h <u>yd</u> <u>e</u> , h <u>yd</u> <u>a</u>
G. siz <u>ea</u>	sif <u>a</u>	h <u>yd</u> <u>a</u>
D. siz <u>um</u>	sif <u>um</u>	h <u>yd</u> <u>um</u>
A. siz <u>e</u> , siz <u>ea</u> s	sif <u>u</u>	h <u>yd</u> <u>e</u> , h <u>yd</u> <u>a</u>

**Table 77**  
**Declension of u-stem Nouns (Strong Declension)**

Singular			
Masculine			Feminine
N. sun <u>u</u> “son”	dur <u>u</u> “door”	flōr “floor”	hand “hand”
G. sun <u>a</u>	dur <u>a</u>	flōr <u>a</u>	hand <u>a</u>
D. sun <u>a</u>	dur <u>a</u>	flōr <u>a</u>	hand <u>a</u>
A. sun <u>u</u>	dur <u>u</u>	flōr	hand
Plural			
N. sun <u>a</u>	dur <u>a</u>	flōr <u>a</u>	hand <u>a</u>
G. sun <u>a</u>	dur <u>a</u>	flōr <u>a</u>	hand <u>a</u>
D. sun <u>um</u>	dur <u>um</u>	flōr <u>um</u>	hand <u>um</u>
A. sun <u>a</u>	dur <u>a</u>	flōr <u>a</u>	hand <u>a</u>

**Table 78**  
**Declension of OE n-stem Nouns (Weak Declension)**

Case \ Gender		Masculine		Feminine	Neuter
Singular	Nominative	nama “name”	oxa “ox”	tunze “tongue”	eaze “eye”
	Genitive	nama <u>n</u>	oxa <u>n</u>	tunza <u>n</u>	eaza <u>n</u>
	Dative	nama <u>n</u>	oxa <u>n</u>	tunza <u>n</u>	eaza <u>n</u>
	Accusative	nama <u>n</u>	oxa <u>n</u>	tunza <u>n</u>	eaze
Plural	Nominative	nama <u>n</u>	oxa <u>n</u> “oxen”	tunza <u>n</u>	eaza <u>n</u>
	Genitive	nama <u>na</u>	oxa <u>na</u>	tunza <u>na</u>	eaza <u>na</u>
	Dative	nama <u>m</u>	oxa <u>m</u>	tunza <u>m</u>	eaza <u>m</u>
	Accusative	nama <u>n</u>	oxa <u>n</u>	tunza <u>n</u>	eaza <u>n</u>

**Table 79 Declension of OE root-stem Nouns (Weak Declension)**

Case \ Gender		Masculine	Feminine
Singular	Nominative	mann “man”	mūs “mouse”
	Genitive	mann <u>e</u> s	mū <u>s</u>
	Dative	men(n)	mū <u>s</u>
	Accusative	men(n)	mū <u>s</u>

Plural	Nominative	men(n) “men”	mȳs “mice”
	Genitive	mann <u>a</u>	mū <u>s</u> a
	Dative	mann <u>um</u>	mūs <u>um</u>
	Accusative	men(n)	mȳs

**Table 80**  
**Declension of OE r-stem Nouns (Weak Declension)**

Singular				
	Masculine		Feminine	Neuter
N. A.	fæder “father”	brōþor “brother”	sweostor “sister”	cild “child”
G.	fæder(-es)	brōþor	sweostor	cild <u>e</u> s
D.	fæder	brēþēr	sweostor	cild <u>e</u>
Plural				
N. A.	fæder <u>a</u> s	brōþor (-ru)	sweostor	cild, cild <u>ru</u>
G.	fæder <u>a</u>	brōþr <u>a</u>	sweostr <u>a</u>	cild <u>a</u> , cildr <u>a</u>
D.	fæder <u>um</u>	brōþr <u>um</u>	sweostr <u>um</u>	cild <u>um</u>



**Table 81 Development of the noun “child”**

Number	Dates	VIII-IX cc.	IX-XI cc. XI-XVcc.		XVI c.
Singular	Pronunciation	[i] >	[i:] >		[ai]
	Form	cild	cild	child	child
Plural	Pronunciation	[i]			
	Form	cildru			children

**Table 82 Principal Grammatical Endings in the OE Noun Declension**

Gender, stem Case		Masculine				Feminine				Neuter		
		a	i	u	n	ō	i	u	n	a	i	n
Singular	Nominative	-	-e	-u/o	-a	-u	-	-u/o	-e	-u/o	-e	-e
	Genitive	-es	-es	-a	-an	-e	-e	-a	-an	-es	-es	-an
	Dative	-e	-e	-a	-an	-e	-e	-a	-an	-e	-e	-an
	Accusative	-	-e	-a	-an	-e	-e	-a	-an	-u/o	-e	-e
Plural	Nominative	-as	-e/es	-a	-an	-e	-a	-a	-n	-u/o	-u	-an
	Genitive	-a	-a	-a	-ena	-a	-a	-a	-ena	-a	-a	-ena
	Dative	-um	-um	-um	-um	-um	-um	-um	-um	-um	-um	-um
	Accusative	-as	-e/as	-a	-an	-a	-e	-a	-an	-u/o	-u	an

**Table 83**  
**Moremorphological Classification of Nouns in Middle English**

**a) number**

Old English			Middle English	
a-stem	singular	stān “stone”	singular	stōn
	plural	stānas	plural	stōnes
n-stem	singular	oxa “ox”	singular	oxe
	plural	oxan	plural	oxen
root-stem	singular	tōþ “tooth” bōc “book”	singular	tooth book
	plural	tēþ “teeth” bēc “books”	plural	teeth bookes
borrowed			singular	corage
			plural	corages

56

**b) case**

Old English		Middle English	
Nominative	stān	nama	} Common case stōn name
Accusative	stān	naman	
Dative	stāne	naman	
Genitive	stānes	naman	Genitive case stōnes names

**Table 84**  
**Morphological Classification of Nouns in New English**

Old English	Middle English
Nominative & Accusative	Common plural ending -es
Plural ending -as	
Genitive singular ending -es	Genitive singular ending -s

**Table 85 Declension of Personal Pronouns  
and Their Development**

	Ist person	2 <sup>nd</sup> person	3 <sup>rd</sup> person
Singular	N. ic > "I"	þū > "thou"	Masc. hē "he"    Fem. hēo "she"    Neuter hit "it"
	G. mīn > "my, mine"	þīn > "thine, thy"	his "his"    hire "her"    his "its"
	D. mē > "me"	þē > "thee"	him "him"    hire "her"    him "it"
	A. mē, mec > "me"	þē, þec > "thee"	hine "him"    hīe "her"    hit "it"
Dual	N. wit "we both"	3it "you both"	The dual number of the 1 <sup>st</sup> and 2 <sup>nd</sup> persons disappeared in Middle English.
	G. uncer "both ours"	incer "both yours"	
	D. unc "us both"	inc "you both"	
	A. unc "us both"	inc, incit	

Plural	N. wē > “we all”	zē > “you all”	hīe, hī, hēo > “they”
	G. ūre > “our all”	ēower > your	hiera, hira > “their”
	D. ūs > “us all”	ēow > you	him > “them”
	A. ūs > “us all”	ēow > you	hīe, hī, hēo > “them”

**Table 86 The Origin of the Personal Pronoun “she”**

OE		ME	NE
hēo (personal pronoun, feminine gender)	+ sēo (demonstrative pronoun, feminine gender)	> she, sho[sjo:]>[ʃɔ:]	she[ʃi:]

**Table 87**  
**Comparison of Modern English Personal Pronouns**  
**with those of Old English**

Modern English			Case	Old English
<b>1 st person</b>				
Singular	I	<	Nominative	ic
	my (mine)	<	Genitive	mīn
	me	<	Dative	mē
	me	<	Accusative	mē, mec
Plural	we	<	Nominative	wē
	our	<	Genitive	ūre
	us	<	Dative	ūs
	us	<	Accusative	ūs
<b>2 nd person</b>				
Singular	you (thou)	<	Nominative	þū
	your (thine,thy)	<	Genitive	þīn
	you (thee)	<	Dative	þē
	you (thee)	<	Accusative	þē, þec
Plural	you	<	Nominative	zē
	your	<	Genitive	ēower
	you	<	Dative	ēow
	you	<	Accusative	ēow
<b>3 rd Person</b>				
Singular	he	<	Nominative	hē
	his	<	Genitive	his
	him	<	Dative	him
	him	<	Accusative	hine
	she(hēo+sēo)	<	Nominative	hēo
	her	<	Genitive	hire
	her	<	Dative	hire
	her	<	Accusative	hīe, hī

	it	<	Nominative	hit
	its	<	Genitive	his
	it	<	Dative	him
	it	<	Accusative	hit
Plural	they (Scand.)	<	Nominative	hīe, hī
	their(Scand.)	<	Genitive	hira, hiera,
	them(Scand.)	<	Dative	heora, hiora
	them (Scand.)	<	Accusative	him, heom hīe, hī

**Table 88 Declension of Demonstrative Pronouns**

Cases	Singular Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural All Genders
Nom.	sē > the	sēo, sīo	þæt (that)	þā
Gen.	þæs	þære	þæs	þāra, þæra
Dat.	þæm	þære	þæm, þām	þæm, þām
Acc.	þone	þā	þæt	þā
Inst.	þý, þon	-	þý, þon	-

**Table 89 Declension of the Demonstrative Pronoun  
*þes* “this”**

Case	Singular			Plural
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	All genders
Nom.	þes	þēos,	þis	þās
Gen.	þisses	þīos	þisses	þissa, þisra
Dat.	þissum,	þisse	þissum,	þissum,
Acc.	þeossum	þās	þeossum	þeossum
Inst.	þisne, þýsne þý	þisse	þis þýs	þās

**Table 90 The Origin of the Articles**

**a) indefinite article**

OE	ME	NE
ān	one (numeral)	> one
	an, a (indefinite pronoun, indefinite article)	> a, an

**b) definite article**

OE	ME	NE
sē (demonstrative pronoun, masculine, singular)	the [θe] (definite article)	the [ði:]

**Table 91 Old English Interrogative Pronouns**

The interrogative pronoun *hwā* “who” was declined only in the singular and had only masculine and neuter forms:

	Masculine	Neuter
N.	hwā “who”	hwæt “what”
G.	hwæs “whose”	hwæs
D.	hwæm, hwām “whom”	hwæm, hwām
A.	hwone “whom”	hwæt
Ins.	hwæm, hwām “whom”	hwÿ “why”

**Table 92 List of Other Old English Pronouns**

**a) definite pronouns**

zēhwā “every”	(declined as hwā “who”)
zēhwilc “each”	They are declined as strong
ǣzþer “either”	adjectives.
ǣlc “each”	
swilc “such”	

**b) indefinite pronouns**

sum “some”	They both are declined as strong adjectives.
ǣniȝ “any”	

**c) negative pronouns**

nān, náeniȝ (no, none)	are declined as strong adjectives.
------------------------	------------------------------------

**d) relative pronouns**

þe “which, that”	} They are not declined.
sēþe “which, that”	
swilc “such”	- It is declined like strong adjectives.
seilca “the same”	- It is declined like weak adjectives.

**Table 93**  
**Declension of Old English Adjectives**

Declension	Indefinite (Strong)	Definite (Weak)
Case		
Singular		
Nominative	ȝōd “good”	ȝōd <u>a</u>
Genitive	ȝōd <u>e</u> s	ȝōd <u>a</u> n
Dative	ȝōd <u>u</u> m	ȝōd <u>a</u> n
Accusative	ȝōd <u>n</u> e	ȝōd <u>a</u> n
Instrumental	ȝōd <u>e</u>	-
Plural		
Nominative	ȝōd <u>e</u>	ȝōd <u>a</u> n
Genitive	ȝōd <u>r</u> a	ȝōd <u>r</u> a
Dative	ȝōd <u>u</u> m	ȝōd <u>u</u> m
Accusative	ȝōd <u>e</u>	ȝōd <u>a</u> n



**Table 94 Declension of Old English Adjectives**

**a) monosyllabic**

Singular			Plural		
Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Masc	Neut.	Fem.
N blæc“black”	blæc	blacu	N blace	blacu	blaca
G blaces	blaces	blæcre	G blacra	blacra	blacra
D blacum	blacum	blæcre	D blacum	blacum	blacum
A blæcne	blæc	blace	A blace	blacu	blaca
I blace	blace	-	-	-	-

63

**b) dissyllabic**

Singular			Plural.		
Masculine	Neuter	Feminine	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine
N. ēadiȝ“happy”	ēadiȝ	ēadiȝu	N. ēadiȝe	ēadiȝu	ēadiȝa
G. ēadiȝes	ēadiȝes	ēadiȝre	G. ēadiȝra	ēadiȝra	ēadiȝra
D. ēadiȝum	ēadiȝum	ēadiȝre	D. ēadiȝum	ēadiȝum	ēadiȝum
A. ēadiȝne	ēadiȝ	ēadiȝe	A. ēadiȝe	ēadiȝu	ēadiȝu
I. ēadiȝe	ēadiȝe	-	-	-	-

c) ja, jō-stems

Singular			Plural		
Masc.	Neut..	Fem	Masc.	Neut..	Fem.
N. swēte “sweet”	swēte	swēt <u>u</u>	swēte	swēt <u>u</u>	swēt <u>a</u>
G. swētes	swētes	swētr <u>e</u>	swētra	swētra	swēter <u>a</u>
D. swētum	swētum	swētr <u>e</u>	swētum	swētum	swētum
A. swētne	swēte	swēte	swēte	swēt <u>u</u>	swēt <u>a</u>
I. swēte	swēte	-	-	-	-

Table 95 Degrees of Comparison of OE Adjectives

64

a) synthetic way

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
heard “hard”	heardra “harder”	heardost “hardest”
fæ3er “fair”	fæ3erra “fairer”	fæ3erost “fairest”
lēof “dear”	lēofra “dearer”	lēofost “dearest”

b) with mutation

eald “old”	ieldra (<ealdira) “elder”	ieldest (<ealdist) “eldest”
stron3 “strong”	stren3ra “stronger”	stren3est “strongest”
lon3 “long”	len3ra “longer”	len3est “longest”

c) irregular comparison of adjectives

Positive		Comparative	Superlative
Ʒōd	“good”	betera “better”	betst “best”
yfel	“bad”	wiersa(wyrsa)“worse”	wierrest(wyrst)“worst”
micel (mycel)	“much”	māra “more”	mæst “most”
lytel	“little”	læssa “less”	læst “last”, “least”

**Table 96 Development of Degrees of Comparison of Adjectives**

Degrees Periods	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Old English	heard	heardra	heardost
Middle English	hard	hardre	hardest
New English	hard	harder	hardest
Old English	eald	ieldra/yldra	ieldest
Middle English	ald	eldre	eldest
New English	old	elder	eldest
Old English	Ʒōd	betera	betst
Middle English	good	better	best
New English	good	better	best

**Table 97 Adjective-forming Suffixes**

1. *-ede* (group “adjective stem+substantive stem”): *micelhēafdede* “large-headed”
2. *-ihte* (from substantives with mutation): *þirnihte* “thorny”
3. *-iȝ* (from substantives with mutation): *hāliȝ* “holy”, *mistiȝ* “misty”
4. *-en, -in* (with mutation): *ȝylden* “golden”, *wyllen* “woollen”
5. *-isc* (nationality): *Enȝlisc* “English”, *Welisc* “Welsh”, *mennisc* “human”
6. *-sum* (from stems of verbs, adjectives, substantives): *sibbsum* “peaceful”, *hiersum* “obedient”
7. *-feald* (from stems of numerals, adjectives): *þriefeald* “threefold”
8. *-full* (from abstract substantive stems): *sorȝfull* “sorrowful”
9. *-lēas* (from verbal and nominal stems): *slæplēas* “sleepless”
10. *-līc* (from substantive and adjective stems): *eorþlīc* “earthly”
11. *-wearld* (from adjective, substantive, adverb stems): *inneward* “internal”, *hāmward* “homeward”.

**Table 98 Old English Cardinal Numerals**

1 – ān	18 – eahtatīene
2 – twā	19 – niȝontīene
3 – þrīe	20 – twentiȝ
4 - fēower	30 – þrītiȝ
5 - fīf	40 – fēowertiȝ
6 - siex, six	50 – fiftiȝ
7 - seofon, siofen	60 – siextiȝ
8 - eahta	70 – hundseofontiȝ
9 – niȝon	80 – hundeahtiȝ
10 – tīen, tȳn, tēn	90 – hundniȝontiȝ
11 – endlefan	100 – hund, hundtēonti
12 – twelf	110 – hundendlufontiȝ
13 – þrēotīene	120 – hundtwelftiȝ
14 – fēowertīene	200 – tū hund
15 – fiftīene	300 – þrēo hund
16 – sixtīene	1000 – þūsend
17 – seofontīene	2000 - tū þūsendu

Units are usually put before tens: ān and twentiȝ (21), fīf and twentiȝ manna (25 men).

**Table 99 Declension of Cardinal Numbers**

The cardinal numerals 1-3 are declined.

1- ān is declined like a strong adjective.

2- twā is declined in the following manner:

2 twá	3 þríe
Masc. Neut. Fem.	Masc. Neut. Fem.
N twezēn tū, twā, twā	N þríe, þrī, þrý, þrīo, þrēo þrīo, þrēo
G twēzēa, twēzra	G þrīora, þrēora
D twām, twām	D þrīm
A twezēn tū, twā, twā	A þríe, þrī, þrý, þrīo, þrēo þrīo, þrēo

**Table 100 Ordinal Numerals**

Ordinal numerals use the suffix -ta or -þa, etymologically a common Indo-European one (\*-to-).

1 – forma, fyresta

2 – oþer, æfterra

3 – þrida, þirda

4 – fēorþa

5 – fīfta

6 – siexta, syxta

16 – sixtēoþa

17 – siofontēoþa

18 – eahtatēoþa

19 - nizontēoþa

20 – twentizōþa

30 – þrittizōþa

- |                  |                         |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| 7 – siofoþa      | 40 – fēowertizōþa       |
| 8 – eahtoþa      | 50 – fiftizōþa          |
| 9 – nizōþa       | 60 - siextizōþa         |
| 10 – tēoþa       | 70 - hundsiofontizōþa   |
| 11 – endlefta    | 80 - hundeahtatizōþa    |
| 12 – twelfta     | 90 - hundnizontizōþa    |
| 13 – þreotēoþa   | 100 – hundertēontiozōþa |
| 14 – fēowertēoþa | 110 - hundæleftizōþa    |
| 15 – fiftēoþa    | 120 - hundtwelftizōþa   |

**Table 101**  
**Conjugation of Old English Strong Verbs**

Classes Forms	Class I gradation vowel + i	Class III gradation vowel + sonorant + any consonant	Class IV gradation vowel + sonorant
Infinitive	wrītan “write”	bindan “bind”	niman “take”
Present Ind. Sing.			
1	wrīte	binde	nime
2	wrītest, wrītst	bindest, bindst	nimst
3	wrīteþ, writ	bindeþ, bint	nim(e)þ
Plur.	wrītaþ	bindaþ	nimaþ

Present Subj. Singular Plural	wrīte wrīten writen	binde binden binden	nime nimen nimen
Imperative Singular Plural	wrīt wrītaþ	bind bindaþ	nim nimaþ
Participle I	wrītende	bindende	nimende
Past Ind. Sing. 1 2 3 Plural	wrāt write wrāt writon	band, bond bunde band, bond bundon	nam name nam namon
Past Subj. Singular Plural	write writen	bunde bunden	name namen
Participle II	(3e)writen	(3e)bunden	(3e)numen

**Table 102 Seven Classes of Old English Strong Verbs**

	Infinitive	Preterite	Preterite Plural	Past
--	------------	-----------	------------------	------



		Singular		Participle
Class I	drīfan “drive” rīdan “ride” rīsan “rise” wrītan “write”	drāf rād rās wrāt	drifon ridon rison writon	3edrifen 3eriden 3erisen 3ewriten
Cl. II(1) (2) (3)	clēofan “cleave” creopan “creep” scūfan “shove” sprūtan “sprout” frēosan “freeze” lēosan “lose” sēoðan “seethe”	clēaf creap scēaf sprēat frēas lēas sēað	clufon crupon scufon spruton fruron luron sudon	3eclofen 3ecropen 3ecofen 3esproten 3efrozen 3eloren 3esoden
Cl.III (1) (2) (3)	drincan “drink” findan “find” sincan “sink” sin3an “sing” sprin3an “spring” swimman “swim” helpan “help” meltan “melt” swellan “swell” ceorfan “carve” feohtan “fight”	dranc fand sanc san3 spran3 swam healp mealt sweall cearf feagt	druncon fundon suncon sun3on sprun3on swummon hulpon multon swullon curfon fuhton	3edruncen 3efuncen 3esuncen 3esun3en 3esprun3en 3eswummen 3eholpen 3emolten 3eswollen 3ecorfen 3efohten

Cl. IV	beran “bear” stelan “steal” teran “tera”	bær stæl tær	báeron stáelon tæron	zëboren zëstolen zëtoren
Cl. V (1) (2)	metan “mete” sprecan “speak” zifan “give”	mæt spræc zeaf	máeton spáecon zeafon	zëmeten zësprecen zëzifën
Cl. VI (1) (2)	faran “fare, go” scacan “shake” standan “stand”	fōr scōc stōd	fōron scōcon stōdon	zëfaren zëscacen zëstanden
Cl. VII (1) (2)	cnāwan “know” feallan “fall” flōwan “flow” hātan “be called” slæpan “sleep”	cnēow fēoll flēow hēt slēp	cnēowon fēollon flēowon hēton slēpon	zëcnāwen zëfeallen zëflōwen zëhāten zëslæpen

**Table 103 Morphological Classification of Verbs in Middle and New English**

Old English	bitan – bāt – biton – biten
Middle English	biten – bot – biten - biten
New English	bite – bit                      bitten
Old English	stelan – stæl – stáelon - stolen
Middle English	stelen – stal – stelen - stolen

New English	steal – stole	stolen
-------------	---------------	--------



**Table 104 Old English Weak Verbs**

	Infinitive	Preterite (Past)	Past Participle
Class I	fremman “to do” cēpan “to keep” hīeran “to hear” ferian “to carry” byczan “to buy” þencan “to think	fremede “did” cēpte “kept” hīerde “heard” ferede “carried” bohte “bought” þōhte “thought”	ʒefremed “done” ʒecēped “kept” ʒehīered “heard” ʒefered “carried” ʒeboht “bought” ʒepōht “thought”
Class II	endian “to end”	endode “ended”	ʒendod “ended”
Class III	habban “to have” seczan “to say”	hæfde “had” sæzde “said”	ʒehæfd “had” ʒesæzd “said”

71

**Table 105 Conjugation of Old English Weak Verbs**

Classes		Class I	Class II	Class III
Forms		stem suffix -i-	stem suffix -oi-	
Infinitive		cēpan “keep”	lōcian “look”	habban “have”
Present Ind.	Singular 1	cēpe	lōcie	hæbbe
	2	cēpst	lōcast	hafast, hæfst
	3	cēpþ	lōcaþ	hafap, hæfp
Plural		cēpaþ	lōciaþ	habbaþ

Present Subj.			
Singular	cē <u>p</u> e	lō <u>c</u> i <u>e</u>	hæ <u>b</u> b <u>e</u>
Plural	cē <u>p</u> e <u>n</u>	lō <u>c</u> i <u>e</u> <u>n</u>	hæ <u>b</u> b <u>e</u> <u>n</u>
Imperative			
Singular	cē <u>p</u>	lō <u>c</u> a	hæ <u>f</u> a
Plural	cē <u>p</u> a <u>þ</u>	lō <u>c</u> i <u>a</u> þ	hæ <u>b</u> b <u>a</u> þ
Participle I	cē <u>p</u> e <u>n</u> d <u>e</u>	lō <u>c</u> i <u>e</u> n <u>d</u> e	hæ <u>b</u> b <u>e</u> n <u>d</u> e
Past Ind.			
Singular	1 cē <u>p</u> t <u>e</u>	lō <u>c</u> o <u>d</u> e	hæ <u>f</u> d <u>e</u>
	2 cē <u>p</u> t <u>e</u> s(t)	lō <u>c</u> o <u>d</u> e <u>s</u> (t)	hæ <u>f</u> d <u>e</u> s <u>t</u>
	3 cē <u>p</u> t <u>e</u>	lō <u>c</u> o <u>d</u> e	hæ <u>f</u> d <u>e</u>
Plural	cē <u>p</u> t <u>o</u> n	lō <u>c</u> o <u>d</u> o <u>n</u>	hæ <u>f</u> d <u>o</u> n
Past Subj.			
Singular	cē <u>p</u> t <u>e</u>	lō <u>c</u> o <u>d</u> e	hæ <u>f</u> d <u>e</u> n
Plural	cē <u>p</u> t <u>e</u> n	lō <u>c</u> o <u>d</u> e <u>n</u>	hæ <u>f</u> d <u>e</u> n
Participle II	(3e)cē <u>p</u> e <u>d</u>	(3e)lō <u>c</u> o <u>d</u>	(3e)hæ <u>f</u> d

**Table 106 Old English Irregular Weak Verbs**

tellan – talde – tald (to tell) sellan – salde – sald (to sell)
--

**Table 107 Old English Preterite-Present Verbs**

Infinitive	Present	Preterite (Past)
āzan	āh	āhte “ought”
cunnan “know” how	cann “can”	cūðe “could”
mazan “be able”	mæz “may”	meahte (might)
mōtan “be allowed”	mōt	mōste (must)
sculan “be obliged”	sceal “shall”	sceolde (should)

**Table 108 Conjugation of “bēon/wesan” and “zān/ēode”**

Infinitive	wesān/bēon		zān/ēode
Present Indicative			
Singular 1	eom	bēo	zā
2	eart	bist	zæst
3	is	biþ	zæþ
Plural.	sint, sindon	bēoþ	zāþ
Present Subjunctive			
Singular	sȳ, sī	bēo	zā
Plural	sȳn, sīn	bēon	zān
Imperatve			
Singular	wæs	bēo	zā
Plural	wæsāþ	bēoþ	zāþ
Participle I	wesende bēonde		zānde, zānzende

Past Indicative		
Singular 1	wæs	ēode
2	wære	ēodest
3	wæs	ēode
Plural	wæron	ēodon
Past Subjunctive		
Singular	wære	ēode
Plural	wæren	ēoden
Participle II		(3e) 3ān

**Table 109**  
**Conjugation of OE Irregular Verbs “dōn” and “3ān”**

Present Indicative	dōn “to do”	3ān “to go”
1 st Person Singular	dō	3ā
2 nd Person Singular	dēst	3æst
3 rd Person Singular	dēþ	3æþ
Plural	dēþ	3aþ
Imperative Singular	dō	3ā
Preterite Indicative Singular	dyde	3ode
Past Participle	3edōn	3e3ān

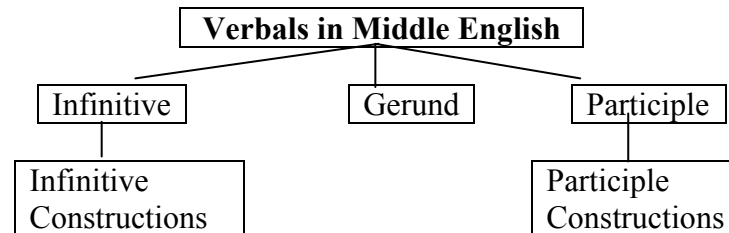
**Table 110 Conjugation of Old English Verb “willan”**

	Present Indicative	Present Subjunctive
1 st Person Singular	wille	wille
2 nd Person Singular	wilt	wille
3 rd Person Singular	wile	wille
Plural	willaþ	willen
Preterite	wolde	



**Table 111 General Survey of Finite and Non-Finite Forms of the Verb**

Infinitive	Nominative case	Dative case
	wrītan (to write)	to writenne (so that I shall write)
	cēpende (to keep)	to cepenne (so that I shall keep)
	drincan (to drink)	to drincenne (so that I shall drink)
Present Participle		Past Participle
	wrītende	writen
	cēpende	cēpt
	drincende	druncen

**Table 112**

**Table 113 Development of Non-Finite Forms of the Verb**

Infinitive	OE	ME	NE
	<p>1. Simple infinitive (uninflected form): wītan, sinzan; seczan</p> <p>2. Dative Infinitive with the preposition “tō” (inflected form) -enne; -anne denote the direction or purpose of the action: hīe comon þæt land tō <u>scēwianne</u> “they came <u>for the purpose of looking</u> at that land.”</p>	<p>&gt; written, singen, seggen, sayen</p> <p>2. The Dative case inflection “-enne” was lost; “tō” still preserved its old meaning of direction and purpose: We habbe begunnen on <u>to seggen</u> in English “We have commenced <u>to tell</u> you in English.”</p>	<p>&gt; to write, to sing, to say</p>
Present Participle	<u>sinzende</u>	<p>&gt; <u>singinde</u> (southern dialect) &gt; singing(e) (Midland dialect) Two types of constructions: 1) He lay</p>	> singing

		<p><u>dyinde</u> “ he lay dying”  He lay on <u>dyinge</u> “he lay on dying”(in the process of dying: on dyinge &gt; a-dying(e)  2) He herde foweles <u>singinde</u> “He heard the birds singing”(a participle construction);  He herde foweles <u>singinge</u> “he heard the birds’ singing” (a verbal noun)</p>	<p>&gt; dying   &gt; singing   &gt; the singing of birds(a verbal noun)</p>
Past Participle	<p>1. They were declined like adjectives.  2. Past Participle took the prefix “3e-“  3e-writen (written)  3e-macode (made)  3e-cēpt (kept)</p>	> y-writen	

**Table 114 Development of Gerund**

OE	ME	NE
It didn't exist.	1) It began developing from the verbal noun; 2) Unlike a verbal noun it takes a direct object: "in usinge hem "in using them" (G. Chaucer)	In the 18th century constructions are still common where an <u>-ing-</u> form has the syntactical characteristics of the gerund

**Table 115 Development of the Analytical Forms of the Verb**

**a) The Perfect Form**

OE	ME	NE
1. It developed from OE syntactic construction consisting of the verb "habban+direct object+Participle II" of a transitive verb. e.g. Hēo hæfþ hine zefundene. "She has him found".	> have+Participle II And whan this worthy duk hath thus y-don "he took his host, and hoom he rood cumon"	> have+Past Participle

<p>2. For intransitive verbs: bēon/wesan “be”. Hē wæs ze-cumen. “He was come”.</p>	<p>&gt; have+direct object+participle II</p> <p>&gt; he was come</p>	<p>&gt; he was come; “Presently he was gone (as a survival)”.</p>
--	--	---

**b) The Passive Voice**

OE	ME	NE
<p>“bēon/wesan/weorþan+ Participle II of a transitive verb” Sēo bōc <u>wæs zewriten</u>. “The book was written”.</p>	<p>&gt;ben+Participle II The castel-yate on my right hand, which that so wel <u>covern</u> <u>was</u> that never swich another was. “The castle gate on my right hand which <u>was</u> so well <u>carved</u> that there never was such another”.</p>	<p>&gt; be+Participle II “Arthur, whom they say is killed (has been killed) tonight. (W.Shakespeare)”</p>

### c) The Continuous Aspect

OE	ME	NE
<p>The syntactic construction, “bēon/wesan+Present Participle” expressed an action in progress at a given moment:  Hē <u>is</u> (wæs) <u>singende</u>  “literally, he is (was) singing”</p>	<p>The forms of the continuous aspect first emerged in Middle English. This construction got confused with the verbal noun construction: “he is on singing(e)” “he is engaged in singing”  &gt; he is on singing</p>	<p>It developed in Modern English and became fully established in the 17<sup>th</sup> century  &gt; he is singing.  The Passive Continuous first emerged in the 18<sup>th</sup> century: The house is being built.</p>

### d) The Future Tense

OE	ME	NE
<p>sceal (inf. sculan). It had modal meaning of obligation or volition.  wille (inf. willan) wille ic  āseczan “will (or shall I say)”.</p>	<p>&gt; shall, will+infinitive developed from modal phrases used as compound predicates into analytical forms of the future tense.</p>	<p>&gt; shall, will</p>

**Table 116 Analytical Forms with “do”**

OE	ME	NE
dōn	“dōn, dide” expressed a causative meaning: And <u>dide</u> him ȝrete oþes <u>swere</u> “And made him <u>swear</u> great oaths”;	The periphrasis with “do” was used in negative, affirmative and interrogative sentences: We <u>do not know</u> how he may soften at the sight o’the child (W. Shakespeare)

**Table 117 Development of Subjunctive Mood**

OE	ME	NE
I, II, III persons singular: wriþe, binde, sēo, styrie, telle, lufie, secȝe, libbe, hæbbe; Plural: <u>written</u> , <u>binden</u> , <u>sēon</u> , <u>styrien</u> , <u>tellen</u> , <u>lufien</u> , <u>secȝen</u> , <u>libben</u> , <u>hæbben</u> ; Nū ic suna mīnum syllan	Verbs expressing problematic and imaginary actions: as the first component: biden, delignen, granten, teten, ben, lever, sholde, wolde. e.g. She wolde wepe if that she sawa mous	Means of expressing Subjunctive Mood in Modern English: should, would. But if my father had not scanted me ...yourself, renowned prince, than stood as fair as any comer;

wolde 3ūþzewædu “Now I would give my son a suit of armour”.	caught in a trappe, if it were deed or bledde “she would weep, if she saw a mouse caught in a trap, if it were dead or bleeding” (G.Chaucer).	
---	---	--

**Table 118 The Old English Adverbs**

þa “then”	þær “there”	nū “now”	hider “hither”
þonne “then”	þider “thither”	hēr “here”	heonan “hence”
sōna “soon”	eft “again”	swā “so”	
oft “often”		hwīlum “sometimes”	

**Table 119 Degrees of Comparison of Old English Adverbs**

wīde “widely”	–	wīdor “more widely”	–	wīdost “most widely”
wel “well”	–	betre “better”	–	best “best”
yfele “badly”	–	wiers, wurs “worse”	–	wierst “worst”
micele “much”	–	māre “more”	–	mæst “most”



**Table 120 Old English Derivative Adverbs**

by the suffix –e	(from the neuter adjectives of strong declension): wīde “widely”, dēope “deeply”, fæste “fast”, hearde “hard”;
by the suffixes –līc, -līce	(from more complex adjectives): bealdlīce “boldly”, freondlīce “in a friendly way”

**Table 121 Development of Old English Prepositions**

OE	ME	NE
æfter “after”	> after	> after
æt “at”	> at	> at
be “close to”	> by “by means of, owing to”	> by
beforan “before”	> beforen	> before
būtan “without”	> but “except”	> but “except”
for “in front of, for”	> for	> for
from “from”	> from	> from
in “in”	> in	> in
mid “with”	-	-
of, off, “out of”, “from”	> of “from”	> of
ofer “over”	> over	> over

on “on”	> on, a-(prefix in stative words: aslepe “asleep”, alive “alive”, afered “afraid”	> on, a-(prefix in stative words) afraid, alive
tō “to”	> to “denoting direction”	> to
þurh “through”	> thurh	> through
under “under”	> under	> under
wiþ (wiper) “against” from”;	> with	> with
ymb “about” “alongside of”	-	-

**Table 122 Development of Old English Conjunctions**

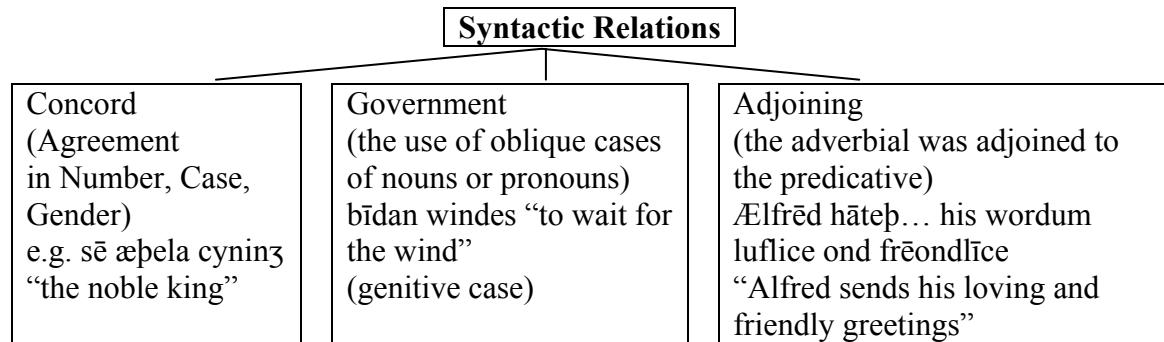
	OE	ME	NE (substituted by)
Coordinative	ac “but, and” and eac “also” ze “and” oþe “or”	- and - -	- and - -
Subordinative	ær “before that” ær þæm þe “before” æfter þam þe “after” butan “unless”	- - > after > but	- - > after > but

eal-swā	> as	> as
for þæm (þam) þe “in order to”	-	-
forþon “as”	-	-
forþon þe, forþy þe “because”	-	-
ʒif “if”	> if	> if
mid þý þe, mid þām þe	-	-
“when, although”	-	-
nū þe “now that”	-	-
oþ “until, till”	-	-
sipþan “when”	> sith	-
swā “as”, “when”	> so	> so
swā...swā “so...as”	> so...as	> so ... as
swā sona swā “as soon as”	> as soon as	> as soon as
swā þæt “so that”	> so that	> so ...that
þa “when”	-	-
þa hwīle þe “while”	> whyl	> while
þonne “when”	-	-
þy “because”	-	-

	þȳ þe “so that”	-	-
	to þan þe “in order that”	-	-
	þa...þa “when”	-	-
	þær... þær “where”	-	-
	þæs “as”	-	-
	þæt “that”	> that	> that
	þēah “though”	> though	> though

**Table 123 Old English Syntax**

88



**Table 124**

**Principal Parts of the Old English Sentence**

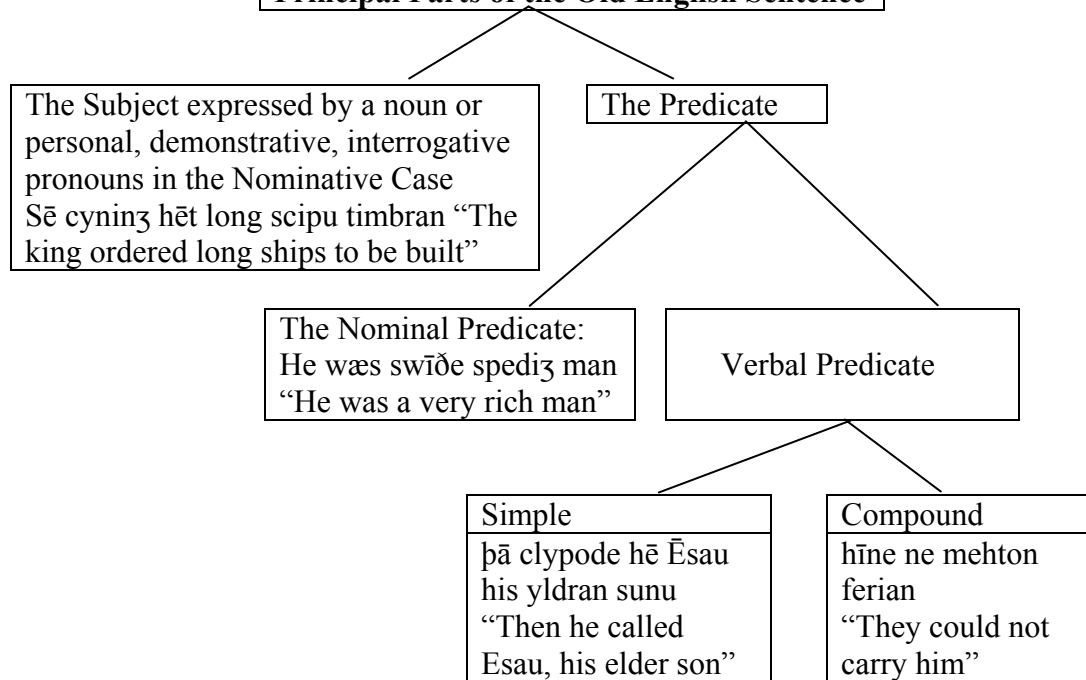


Table 125

Secondary Parts of the OE Sentence
------------------------------------

The Object	The Attribute	The Adverbials
1. Direct: hine man ofslōȝ “they killed him” 2. Indirect: ic ēow secȝe “I say to you”	1. Noun in the Genitive case: þæt hūs þæs ȝebeorscipes “the house of feasting” 2. Pronouns: hēr is mīn cnapa “here is my servant” 3. Prepositively or postpositively: sē cyninȝ Oswald; Ælfrēd cyninȝ	expressed by adverbs and prepositional phrases: on fēawum stōwum styccemælum wīciap Finnas “in a few places here and there live Finns”.

**Table 126 OE Word Order**

**a) the direct word order**

Subject	Predicate	Object	Adverbials
Ōnthere Ohthere	sæde said	his hlāforde to his lord	

**b) inversion, when the sentence is headed by an adverb**

Adverbial	Predicate	Subject	Object
þā then	cwæp said	se cyning the king	

**c) when the finite verb stands at the end in subordinate clauses**

Subordinate clause
þe Anȝel-cynnes land ȝe-sōhton “which came to the land of the English race”

**Table 127**

**The Position of an Attribute in OE Sentence**

**a) it precedes its head-word**

Adjective	Noun	Meaning
ȝōd	man	a good man
enȝlisc	ȝewrit	an English text

**b) in post-position**

Noun	Quantitative attribute	Meaning
his suna	twēȝen	his two sons
þā bēc	ealles	all the books

**c) in appositions or exclamations**

Noun	Apposition	Meaning
Ælfrēd	cyning	King Alfred
brōþor	min	my brother
Hrōþȝār	lēofa	dear Hrothgar

**Table 128**  
**The Use of Negation in its Development**

OE	ME	NE
ne (used before a verb) nā (<ne+ā) nān (before a noun) (<ne+ān) “noone”  nabban (<ne+habban) nadde (<ne+hadde) naht, noht “nothing” (<nā+wiht) nað (<ne+hað) næfde (<ne+hæfde) næfre (<ne+æfre) næniȝ (<ne+æniȝ) næron (<ne+wæron) næs (<ne+wæs) neȝðer (<ne+eȝðer) nile (<ne+wille) nis (<ne+is) niste (<ne+wiste) nolde (<ne+wolde)	> no  > non, > no oon none, noon  > noght, nought > no wight  > neuer > nænig	> no  > none, noone  = haven’t = hadn’t > naught, nothing  = didn’t have > never = nothing = weren’t = wasn’t    = isn’t  = wouldn’t
Two or more negations	One or more negations	one negation
ne con ic nōht sinȝan. “I cannot sing anything”.	ne sæh ich nauere ær swulche cnihtes >	“I had never seen such knights”.



**Table 129**

**Types of OE  
Composite Sentences**

Compound Sentence	Complex Sentence consisting of a principal clause and a subordinate clause
Coordinative conjunctions: and, oþþe “or”, ac “but” asyndetically	Subordinate clauses: 1. Subject clause 2. Object clause 3. Attributive clause 4. Adverbial clauses of Place 5. Adverbial clause of Time 6. Adverbial clause of Cause, Result, Condition

**VOCABULARY**

**Table 130 1) Common Indo-European Words in OE  
Vocabulary**

**a) correspondences**

OE	NE	OHG	Non-Germanic Languages	
			Latin	Russian
fæder	father	fater	pater	папа
mōdor	mother	muotar	mater	мать
þrie	three	dri	tres	три
etan	eat	ezzan	edere	еда

**b) semantic spheres**

Nouns	1. Family relations: fæder “father”, brōþor “brother”, sweostor “sister”; 2. Parts of the body: fōt “foot”, heorte “heart”, nosu “nose”;
-------	---

	3. Animals: swīn “swine”, ȝōs “goose”, ȝāt “goat”; 4. Plants: trēow “tree”, beorc “birch”, corn 5. Heavenly bodies: sunne “sun”, mōna “moon” 6. Various: nama “name”, niht “night”, mere (lake, sea)
Adjectives:	nīwe (new), lonȝ (long), rēad (red), swēt (sweet) full;
Verbs:	sittan (sit), licȝan (lie), tēran (tear), etan (eat)
Numerals:	ān (one), twā (two), þrēo (three), fif (five), ten

## 2) Common Germanic Words in OE Vocabulary

### a) correspondences

OE	NE	Other Germanic languages	
		Gothic	OHG
fīnȝer	fīnger	fīggrs	fīnger
sinȝan	siȝ	siȝgwan	siȝan
sciȝ	siȝ	skip	skif

### b) semantic spheres

Nouns	
	1. Parts of the body: hēafod “head”, hand, fīnȝer “finger”; 2. Animals: bera “bear”; 3. Plants: ȝræs “grass”, āc “oak”; 4. Dwellings and their parts, articles of furniture: hūs “house”, rūm “room”, benc “bench”; 5. Means of transport: bāt “boat”, sciȝ “ship”; 6. Various natural phenomena and objects: sǣ “sea”, land, sand, reȝn “rain”;

Adjectives:	Ʒrēne “green”, blæc “black”, lytel “little”, eald “old”;
Verbs:	sēon “see”, spreca “speak”, tellan “tell”, slæpan “sleep”, drincan “drink”;

### 3) West Germanic Words in OE Vocabulary

#### a) correspondences

OE	NE	OHG
scēap	sheep	scaf
Ʒrēat	great	grôz
macian	make	mahhôn

#### b) semantic spheres

Nouns:	1. Parts of the body: ēare “ear”, ēaƷe “eye” 2. Animals: scēap “sheep”, fox
Adjectives:	measure and various processes: Ʒreat “great”
Verbs:	macian “make”;

#### 4) Specifically Old English words

Structure	OE	NE
Simple	clipian brid	call bird
Compound	hlāford < hlāf+weard hlæfdiƷe < hlāf+diƷe	lord lady

**Table 131**

**Borrowings in Old English**

**Latin borrowings**

**Celtic borrowings**

**1. Latin borrowings**

**a) The First Stratum**

Semantic Spheres of this Layer of Latin borrowings  
(before the first Germanic tribes came)

1. Words connected with trades:  
Lat. moneta>OE mynet “coin”  
Lat. pondō>OE pund “pound”

2. Names of articles dealt with trade:  
Lat. pirum>OE pere “pear”  
Lat. vinum>OE wīn “wine”

3. Names of household articles: Lat. cuppa>OE cuppe “cup”  
Lat. caseus>OE cīese “cheese”

**b) The Second Stratum**

Semantic Spheres of this Layer of Latin borrowings  
(as a result of the contacts of the Germanic settlers with the Romanized Celts)

Roman settlements:  
Lat. strata via>OE stræt (street) (Stratford)  
Lat. vallum>OE weall “wall”  
Lat. castra > OE ceaster “a military camp”: Lancaster, Winchester

Place names:  
Lat. portus>OE port  
OE Bridport  
Devonport  
Portsmouth

**c) The Third Stratum**

Semantic Spheres of this Layer of Latin borrowings  
VI-VII c. when Christianity was introduced

<p>1) Religious Terms: Lat. episcopus&gt;OE biscop “bishop”; Lat. monachus&gt;OE munuc “monk”; Lat. presbyter&gt;OE prēost “priest”</p>	<p>2) Terms of Learning: Lat. magister&gt;OE maȝister “master”; Lat. scholāris&gt;OE scōlere “scholar”;</p>
---	---

**2. Celtic Borrowings**

Geographical names: Avon, Don, Usk, Exe, Ouse, Pen (in Penrith);

Common household matters: crook, clout, darn, gruel, rug;

OE	NE	Celtic elements in placenames	Celtic
dūn “hill, protected place”	down	London < Londonium > Llyndun Dumbarton, Dundee	< Old Irish: dun (dull, dark brown)
binn “mountain peak”	bin	Ben Nevis	< Welsh: ben
cumb “a small valley”	coomb	Cumberland, “land of the Cumry (or Britons)”, Duncombe, Batcombe, Eastcomb	< Welsh cum
	Avon	Stratford-on-Avon (the birthplace of W. Shakespeare)	< Gael. Amhuin “river”

	loch (part of a proper name)	Loch Lomond	< Gael. loch “lake”
--	--	-------------	---------------------------

**Table 132**  
**Origin of the Weekdays (Latin Loan-Translations)**

Old English	Modern English	Meaning
SunnandæƷ	Sunday	day of the Sun
MōnandæƷ	Monday	day of the Moon
TīwesdæƷ	Tuesday	day of Tiw, God of War
WednesdæƷ	Wednesday	day of Woden or Oden, God of Storms in Norse mythology
þunresdæƷ	Thursday	day of Thor, God of Thunder
FrīgedæƷ	Friday	day of Frige, Goddess of Marriage
SæternesdæƷ	Saturday	day of Saturn, God of Time

**Table 133 Origin of the Words “England” and “English”**

OE	ME	NE
AnƷle+land > EnƷlaland	> Engleland >	England
AnƷl+isc > EnƷlisc	> Engliſsh >	English

**Table 134**  
**Scandinavian Influence on the English Vocabulary**

Old English	Scandinavian	Modern English
ceallian (syn. clipian)	kalla >	call
niman	taka >	take
Ʒietan	geta >	get
Ʒiefan	giva >	give
weorpan	kasta >	cast

steorfan (syn. sweltan)	deyia	>	die
laȝu	lagr	>	law
fēolaȝa	felaga	>	fellow
ēaȝþyrel	vindauga	>	window
sweostor	syster	>	sister
heofon	skȝ	>	sky, heaven
steorfan	deyja	>	die, starve

**Table 135 Scandinavian Loanwords**

scab	scowl	rannsaka	skrapa
scare	skulk	skālþr	skil
scathe	skull	skattr	skinn
scoff	skunk	skirra	skȝ

**Table 136  
Similarity between Old English  
and Scandinavian Vocabulary**

Old English	Scandinavian	Modern English
fisc	fiskr	fish
cȝningȝ	konongr	king
stān	steinn	stone
dæȝ	dagr	day
hēafod	hōfoð	head
trēo	trē	tree
cȝnn	kȝn	kin
wīs	viss	wise
lytel	litell	little
micel	mikell	much
sunu	sunr	son
heorte	hiarta	heart
tīma	time	time
oxa	oxe, uxe	ox
fōt	fōtr	foot

fæder	faðer	father
modor	moðer	mother
bītan	bita	bite
beran	bera	bear

**Table 137 French Loanwords**

**a) borrowed between 1251-1400**

Semantic Spheres	Loanwords
Arts:	art, beauty, cloister, image, palace, pillar;
Government:	service, crown, government, minister, parliament, state, noble, baron, prince, duke, castle, policy;
Law:	court, justice, judge, crime, prison, condemn, sentence, felony, sue, traitor, etc.
Military:	army, battle, peace, banner, victory, general, colonel, lieutenant, major, lance, siege aggressor
Rank:	baron, duke, herald, peer, servant, vassal;
Religion:	angel, baptize, preach, saint, sermon, virgin, religion, prey, charity;
City crafts:	painter, tailor, carpenter (but country occupations remained English: shepherd, smith)
Pleasure and entertainment:	music, art, feast, pleasure, leisure, caress, console, coquette, cravat, billet-box, carte , magazine;
Food:	supper, beef, dinner, mutton, pork, sauce, veal, bacon, market, (but the corresponding names of domestic animals remained English: pig, cow, sheep);



Words of everyday life:	air, place, river, large, age, boil, branch, brush, catch, chain, chair, table, choice, cry, cost; apartment, brunette, campaign, caprice, blanche garage, machine;
Relationship:	aunt, uncle, nephew, cousin;

**b) borrowed at the beginning of the XVIIIc.**

Semantic Spheres	Loanwords
Arts:	grotesque, hautbois, rondeau, vogue
Military:	colonel, pilot, pioneer, trophy, volley
Society:	bourgeois, partisan, portmanteau, viceroy
Others:	cache, gauze, machine, piqué, promenade

**Table 138 Derivatives from French Roots**

dukedom	noblest	powerful	preacher
falsehood	preaching	colorless	princely
faintness	courtship	quarrelsome	costwise

**Table 139**

**Synonyms of Anglo-Saxon and French Origin**

Anglo-Saxon	French
to come in	enter
to begin	commence
weak	feeble
stool	chair
hunger	famine
to give up	to abandon
to go on	to continue

**Table 140**  
**Origin of Etymological Doublets**

Ultimate Source	Modern Doublets	Period and Channel
Common Indo-European		
pater	fatherly paternal	native ME French borrowing
Common Germanic		
*gher	yard garden	native ME French borrowing
*gens	choose choice	native ME French borrowing
*wer	ward guard	native ME Scand. borrowing
*sker	shirt skirt	native ME Scand. borrowing
*skhed	shatter scatter	native ME Scand. borrowing
*reisa	rear raise	OE native ME Scand. borrowing
Latin		
discus	disk disc	OE Latin borrowing NE Latin borrowing
moneta	mint money	OE Latin borrowing ME Latin borrowing
uncia	inch ounce	OE Latin borrowing ME Latin borrowing
defectum	defect defeat	NE Latin borrowing ME Latin borrowing
factum	fact feat	NE Latin borrowing ME Latin borrowing
seniorum	senior sir	NE Latin borrowing ME Latin borrowing

Greek		
adamas	diamond	Early ME French borrowing
	adamant	Later ME French borrowing
fantasia	fancy	NE French borrowing
	fantasy	ME French borrowing

**Table 141 Word-Hybrids in English**

<b>English Origin</b>	<b>French Origin</b>	<b>Modern English</b>
be-	-cause	because
a-	-round	around
a-	-curse	accuse(d)
out-	-cry	outcry
over-	-power	overpower
fore-	-front	forefront
salt-	-cell(ar)	saltcellar
false-	-hood	falsehood
<b>French Origin</b>	<b>English Origin</b>	<b>Modern English</b>
hobby-	-horse	hobbyhorse
scape-	-goat	scapegoat
trouble-	-some	troublesome
plenty-	-ful	plentiful
aim-	-less	aimless
re-	-take	retake
<b>English Origin</b>	<b>Scandinavian Origin</b>	<b>Modern English</b>
par-	-take	partake
bandy-	-leg	bandy-legged
<b>French Origin</b>	<b>Scandinavian</b>	<b>Modern English</b>
re-	-call	recall
<b>Latin Origin</b>	<b>French Origin</b>	<b>Modern English</b>
juxta-	-position	juxtaposition

**Table 142 Latin Loanwords**  
**a) borrowed in Middle English**

client	allegory	bull	digit	accede
conviction	desk	collect	elixir	commit
corpus	index	lector	equator	conflict
gratis	item	limbo	ether	immortal
pauper	library	requiem	orbit	infect
subpoena	minor	sanctuary	recipe	infirm

**b) borrowed since 1500**

acumen	census	decorum	medium	pallor	series
appendix	circus	focus	militia	pollen	toga
arena	corona	fungus	octavo	quarto	vacuum

**Table 143 Greek Elements in Early New English**

Greek	Meaning	Loanword
arcae-	“ancient”	archeology
auto -	“self”	autobiography
bio-	“mode of life”	biochemistry
chron-	“time”	chronology
idio-	“personal”	idiograph
logo-	“word”	logograph
morpho-	“form”	morphogenesis
-philic	“loving”	photophilic
-phobe	“fearing”	francophobe
-phone	“sound”	homophone

**Table 144 The Change of Greek Prepositions  
into Prefixes in New English**

Greek Prefixes	Meaning	Word	Hybrids
amphi-	around	theatre	amphitheatre
ana-	up	gram	anagram

anti-	against	toxin	antitoxin
apo-	away	cope	apocope
arch-	rule	enemy	archenemy
cata-	down	logue	catalogue
di-	twice	lemma	dilemma
dia-	through	gram	diagram
endo-	within	derm	endoderm
epi-	on	demic	epidemic
hyper-	over	tension	hypertension
meta-	among	thesis	metathesis
para-	from	phrase	paraphrase
peri-	around	scope	periscope
proto-	first	type	prototype
syn-	with	cope	syncope

**Table 145 Italian Loanwords in Early New English**

Semantic Spheres	Loanwords
Architecture:	balcony, cupola, pizza, portico, stucco
Arts:	cameo, fresco, miniature, stanza

**Table 146 Celtic Loanwords in Early New English  
(borrowings from Munster Irish, Scots, Gaelic and Welsh)**

banshee	clan	loch	slogan
blarney	coleen	shamrock	Tory
bog	leprechaun	shillelagh	whiskey

**Table 147 Germanic Words in Early New English**

Commercial	Military	Nautical	Other
hawker	bulwark	cruise	boor
isinglass	furlough	skipper	booze
mart	knapsack	sloop	easel
muff	tatoo	splice	poll
spool	wagon	yacht	sled

**Table 148**  
**Indian Borrowings in New English**

bandanna	cashmere	dacoit	jute	pundit
brahman	cheetah	dungaree	loot	thug
bungalow	chintz	guru	rajah	yoga

**Table 149**  
**Arabic Borrowings in New English**

afreet	cotton	jinn	sash
alchemy	fakir	Koran	sheikh
algebra	ghoul	mattress	wadi
alcohol	harem	murti	zenith.
Allah	hashish	roc	
almanac	henna	salaam	

**Table 150**  
**Borrowings from Other Languages in New English**

Languages	Words
Spanish	anchovy, armada, booby, corral, iguana, mosquito, mulatto, renegade
Persian	bazaar, pajaas, serai, shah, shawl
Malay	gong, orangutan, paddy, pangolin, sarong

**Table 151**  
**Emergence of Conversion (XV c.)**

Noun			Verb		
OE	ME	NE	OE	ME	NE
drinc(a) >	drinc >	drink	drincan >	drinken >	drink
andswaru >	answeres >	answer	andswarian>	answeren>	answer
lufu >	love >	love	lufian >	loven >	love

**Table 152**  
**Conversion formed by Patterns**

“Noun→Verb” (XV c.)	
chance (v) < Fr. chance (n) < Lat. cadentia (n)	
comb (v) < comb (n)	
land (v) < land (n)	
“Verb→Noun” (XIV c.)	
call (n) < call (v)	
smile (n) < smile (v)	
stare (n) < stare (v)	

**Table 153**  
**Some American and British Lexical Differences**

apartment – flat	holdup man – raider
baby carriage – pram	ice cream – ice
beer – lager	line – queue
biscuit – scone	movies – flicks
carnival – funfair	newstand – kiosk
cracker – biscuit	oatmeal – porridge
dry goods – drapery	overcoat – greatcoat
fall – autumn	potato chip – crisp
flashlight – torch	racetrack – race course
french fries – chips	subway – underground
gas – petrol	truck – lorry

**THE MAP  
OF OLD ENGLISH DIALECTS**





**THE MAP  
OF MIDDLE ENGLISH DIALECTS**



## LIST OF INFLECTIONAL SUFFIXES

### Noun Suffixes

- a (OE)** 1. nominative case ending of n-stem nouns, weak declension: oxa “ox”.;  
2. ending of genitive, dative, accusative cases of u-stem, masculine, feminine nouns, strong declension: dura “of a door”;  
3. genitive plural ending of a-stem, i-stem, o-stem nouns, all genders, strong declension: stāna “of stones”, dura “of doors”; landa “of lands”;
- an (OE)** 1. ending of genitive, dative, accusative cases of n-stem nouns, singular, weak declension: naman “of a name”;  
2. plural ending of nominative and accusative cases of n-stem nouns, weak declension: naman “names”;
- as (OE)** plural ending of nominative and accusative cases of a-stem nouns, masculine, strong declension: fiscas “fishes”(> ME -es, > NE -es, -s);
- e (OE)** 1. ending of nominative, dative, accusative cases of o-stem, i-stem, all genders, singular, strong declension: wine;  
2. dative ending of a-stem nouns, singular, masculine, neuter genders, strong declension: fisce “to a fish”;
- ena (OE)** genitive plural ending of n-stem nouns, all genders, weak declension: namena “of names”;
- es (OE)** 1. plural ending of nominative case of i-stem nouns, masculine, strong declension: wines “wine”;  
2. genitive ending of a-stem, i-stem nouns, singular, masculine, neuter genders, strong declension: fices “of a fish” (> ME -es; > NE ‘s);
- os (OE)** nominative plural ending of “r-stem” nouns, weak

- declension: fæderos “fathers”;
- u (OE) nominative singular ending of u-stem, o-stem nouns, masculine, feminine genders, strong declension: duru “door”;
  - ru (OE) nominative plural ending of s-stem nouns: cildru “children”; breadru “crumbs” (> NE bread);
  - um (OE) dative plural ending of all genders, both strong and weak declension: namum “to names”;
  - 0-inflection (OE)** 1. in nominative, accusative cases, singular and plural of a-stem nouns with a long root-vowel, neuter gender, strong declension: scēap “sheep”;
  - 2. plural of nominative, accusative cases accompanied by palatal mutation, weak declension (or root-stem declension): men;
  - e (ME) weakened form of OE noun endings –a, -u in the strong and weak declensions: sone “to a son”; tale;
  - en (ME) plural ending of common case of OE n-stem nouns (< OE –an): oxen; children;
  - es (ME,NE) 1. plural ending of nouns in the common case, all genders: stones, benches;
  - 2. genitive singular and plural ending of nouns in all genders: sones “son’s”, endes “of an end”;
  - n (ME) the ending added in the southern dialects after the analogy of the weak declension as “children” alongside with “childer”;
  - re (ME) plural ending of nouns with OE weakened –ru: breadre “bread”, children “children”;
  - 0-inflection (ME,NE)** 1. survival from OE a-stem nouns, in neuter gender, singular and plural, strong declension: sheep, deer, swine;
  - 2. survival from OE nominative plural of root-stem declension: men, teeth, feet, geese, mice, lice;
  - ‘s (NE) genitive singular ending: Alfred’s; son’s;

## Pronoun Suffixes

- er** (OE) 1. genitive ending of the first and second personal pronouns, dual number: uncer “both ours”; incer “both yours”;  
2. genitive plural ending of the first and second personal pronouns: user “our”;
- m** (OE) dative ending of personal, demonstrative, interrogative pronouns: him, hwæm “whom”, þam “that”;
- ne** (OE) accusative case ending of personal, demonstrative, interrogative pronouns: hine “him”, hwone “whom”, þone, þisne “this”;
- ra** (OE) genitive plural ending: hiera “their ( þei < Scand. þeir)”;
- re** (OE) genitive, dative singular ending of personal, demonstrative pronouns, feminine gender: hīere, here “her”, þære “that”;
- t** (OE) ending of nominative, accusative cases, singular, neuter gender of personal, demonstrative, interrogative pronouns: hit “it”, þæt “that”, hwæt “what”;
- m** (ME) dative plural ending: þeim (< þei Scand.dative þeir) “them”;

## Adjective Suffixes

- a** (OE) ending of nominative and accusative cases of strong declension of dissyllabic adjectives, feminine, plural: e.g. ēad(i)ȝa “happy”;
- an** (OE) ending of genitive, dative, accusative cases, weak declension of adjectives, masculine, feminine, neuter, singular: blacan “black”;
- e** (OE) the instrumental case ending of strong declension of dissyllabic adjectives, masculine, neuter, singular:

- ēadīze “happy”;
- es (OE) genitive ending of strong declension of dissyllabic adjectives, masculine, neuter, singular: e.g. ēad(i)zes “happy”;
  - ira/-ra (OE) ending of the comparative degree of adjectives: ealdira > ieldra “elder”;
  - ist/-est (OE) ending of the superlative degree of adjectives: ealdist – ieldest “eldest”;
  - ne (OE) accusative ending of dissyllabic adjectives, strong declension, dissyllabic, masculine, singular: ēadīzne “happy”;
  - ost (OE) ending of the superlative degree of adjectives: blacost “blackest”;
  - ra (OE) genitive ending of strong declension of dissyllabic adjectives, masculine, feminine, neuter genders, plural: ēadīzra “happy”;
  - ra (OE) ending of the comparative degree of adjectives, masculine: blæcra “blacker”;
  - re (OE) ending of the comparative degree of adjectives, feminine and neuter genders: ieldre “elder”;
  - re (OE) ending of genitive, dative cases, neuter, singular: zōdre “good”;
  - um (OE) dative ending of strong declension of dissyllabic adjectives, masculine and neuter genders, singular and plural: ēad(i)zum “happy”;
  - est (ME) ending of the superlative degree of adjectives (< OE –ost, -st): gladest, strengest “strongest”;
  - er (ME) ending of the comparative degree of adjectives: gladder, lenger “longer”;
  - er (NE) ending of the comparative degree of adjectives: wider;
  - est (NE) ending of the superlative degree of adjectives: widest;

### Numeral Suffixes

- oþa (OE) ending of the ordinal numeral (MnE **-th**): eahtatēoþa “eighteenth”;
- ta (OE) ending of the ordinal numeral (MnE **-th**): sixta “sixtieth”;
- tiene (OE) ending of the ordinal numeral (MnE **-teen**): siextiene “sixteen”;
- tiz (OE) ending of the ordinal numeral (MnE **-ty**): fiftiz “fifty”
- þa (OE) ending of the ordinal numeral (MnE **-th**): eahtoþa – “eighth”;
- de (ME) ending of the ordinal numeral. (< OE - **da**): thīrde “third”;
- te (ME) ending of the ordinal numeral (< OE **-ta**): sixte “sixty”;
- the (ME) ending of the ordinal numeral (<OE-**ða**, **-þa**): seventhe “seventh”;

### Verb Suffixes

- an (OE) Infinitive ending: drincan “to drink”;
- ast (OE) ending of the second person, singular, Present Indicative of weak verbs: baþast “you bathe”;
- aþ (OE) ending of the Imperative Mood of strong and weak verbs: writaþ “write”;
- aþ (OE) plural ending of Present Indicative of strong verbs: bindaþ “we, you, they bind”;
- d (OE) Past Participle ending of irregular weak verbs, Class I: teald “told”;
- d (OE) Past Participle ending of weak verbs of Class III: lifd “lived”;
- de (OE) Past tense ending of regular weak verbs, Class I: hīerde “heard”;

- de (OE)** Past tense singular ending of irregular weak verbs, Class I: tealde “told”;
- de (OE)** Past tense ending of weak verbs of class III: hæfde “had”;
- ded/-ted (OE)** Past Participle ending of regular weak verbs, Class I: send/sended “sent”; rest/rested “rested”;
- dest (OE)** ending of the second person, singular, Past Indicative of weak verbs: þū dēmdest “you deemed”;
- don (OE)** plural ending of Past Indicative, weak verb: hīe dēmdon “they deemed”;
- e (OE)** ending of the first person singular, Present Indicative, strong verbs: ic binde “I bind”;
- ed (OE)** Past Participle ending of regular weak verbs, Class I: hīered “heard”;
- ede (OE)** Past tense ending of regular weak verbs, Class I: styrede “stirred”;
- en (OE)** ending of Past Participle of strong verbs: bunden “bound”;
- en (OE)** ending of the Subjunctive Mood, plural, Present, Past: binden, bunden “bind”;
- ende (OE)** ending of Present Participle of strong and weak verbs: bindende “binding”;
- enne/-anne (OE)** Infinitive, Dative case ending: tō writenne/writanne “in order to write”;
- est/-st (OE)** ending of the second person singular, Present Indicative, strong verbs: þū bindest “you bind”;
- eþ (OE)** the third person singular ending of Present Indicative, strong verbs: hē bindeþ “he binds”;
- ian (OE)** ending of the Infinitive (<ōjan) of the class II weak verb: lōcian “to look”;
- iaþ (OE)** plural ending of Present Indicative of weak verbs: baþiaþ “we, you, they bathe”;
- od (OE)** Past Participle ending of weak verbs, Class II: hopod “hoped”;

- ode (OE)** ending of the Past tense singular of weak verbs,  
Class II: macode “made”;
- on (OE)** plural ending of the Past tense Indicative of strong  
and weak verbs: wri<sup>o</sup>n “we/you/they wrote”;
- on (OE)** Infinitive ending of strong verbs with a vowel  
contraction in the infinitive after the loss of intervocalic  
“h” in classes I,II,V,VI,VII: se<sup>o</sup>n “to see”;
- onde (OE)** Present Participle ending of strong verbs in the  
V,VII classes: se<sup>o</sup>nde “seeing”;
- oþ (OE)** ending of the Imperative Mood of Class V, strong  
verbs: se<sup>o</sup>þ “see”;
- t (OE)** Past Participle ending of irregular weak verbs, Class I:  
so<sup>o</sup>ht “sought”;
- te (OE)** Past tense ending of irregular weak verbs, Class I:  
bo<sup>o</sup>hte “bought”;
- t/-ed (OE)** Past Participle ending of regular weak verbs, Class  
I: ce<sup>o</sup>þt, ce<sup>o</sup>þed “kept”;
- e (ME)** ending of the Present tense Indicative, I person  
singular: binde “I bind”;
- e (ME)** ending of the Past tense of strong and weak verbs,  
Subjunctive Mood, singular: bounde “bound”;
- ed (ME)** Past Participle ending of weak verbs (< OE **-od,-ed**):  
loved “loved”; maked “made”;
- ede (ME)** Past tense ending of weak verbs (<OE **-ode, -ede**):  
lovede “loved”; makede “made”;
- en (ME)** plural ending of Present Indicative: binden – bind;
- en/-n (ME,NE)** ending of the Infinitive; Past tense plural;  
Past Participle forms (< OE **-an, -on, -en, -n**): written,  
chesen; fallen;
- est (ME)** ending of the Present tense Indicative, II person  
singular: bindest “you bind”;
- eth/-t (ME)** ending of the Present tense Indicative, III person  
singular: bindeth “he binds” bint (< OE **-aþ**);
- inge (ME)** Present Participle ending: writinge “writing”;



- ing** (**ENE**) gerund ending separated from the verbal noun in -**ing** and indicating the object of the action: rewarding my dependents (Shakespeare);
- s** (**NE**) ending of the third person singular, Present Indicative (<ME-**eth**):sends;

### Adverb Suffixes

- or** (**OE**) ending of the comparative degree of adverbs: widor – “wide, widely”.
- ost** (**OE**): ending of the superlative degree of adverbs: heardost “hardest”;
- ra/-ora** (**OE**) ending of the comparative degree of adverbs: heardra “harder”;

## LIST OF DERIVATIONAL SUFFIXES

### Noun-forming

- dōm** (**OE**)(meaning “state, fact of being” originated from the noun dōm “doom”): wisdōm “wisdom”; frēodōm “freedom”;
- en** (**OE**) (to derive nouns of feminine gender from masculine stems, as its original shape was – in, it is accompanied by mutation): zyden “goddess” (< \*zudin), cf. zod “god”,  
fyxen “vixen” (< \* fuxin), cf. fox “fox”;
- end** (**OE**) (to derive nouns of masculine gender, connected with the participle suffix –ende): frēond “friend”;  
dēmend “judge”;
- ere** (**OE**) (to derive masculine nouns): wriðere “writer”; fiscere “fisherman”;
- estre** (**OE**) (to derive feminine nouns): spinnestre “spinner”(> NE “spinster”); bæcestre “ a woman baker”;

- hād (OE)** (originated from the noun hād “title, rank”): cildhād “childhood”; cnihtād “boyhood”;
- inȝ (OE)** (to derive patronomics): æðelinȝ “son of a nobleman, prince”; cyninȝ “king”.
- inȝ (OE)** (to derive nouns with diminutive meaning from adjectives): ȝōslinȝ “gosling”; dēorlinȝ “darling”;
- lāc (OE)** (originated from the noun lāc “gift”, to form abstract nouns from verb stems): rēoflāc “robbery”; wedlāc “wedlock”; scīnlāc “fantasy”;
- nis/ -nes (OE)** (to derive abstract nouns meaning “state, condition, quality” from adjective stems: ȝōdnis “goodness”; blindnes “blindness”;
- ræden (OE)** (originated from the noun “ræden” meaning “condition, reckoning”): frēondræden “friendship”; sibbræden “relationship”; mannræden “faithfulness”;
- scipe (OE)** (cf. the verb scieppan “create”; to form abstract nouns meaning “position, rank”: frēondscipe “friendship”; manscipe “humanity”;
- þ, -uþ, -oþ, -aþ (OE)** (to derive abstract nouns, sometimes accompanied by mutation): trēowþ “truth” from trēow “true”; huntōþ “hunting” from hunta “hunter”;
- unȝ/-inȝ (OE)** (meaning “action, process, product” to derive feminine verbal nouns of feminine gender): leornunȝ, leorninȝ “learning”; rædinȝ “reading”;
- age (ME)** (meaning “process, result, product” < Fr. –age): courage, marriage; luggage;
- al (ME, NE)** (meaning “action, process” < Fr. –al): refusal, funeral, burial;
- ance/-ence (ME)** (meaning “action, quality, state” < Fr. -ans): ignorance, entrance, dependence; hindrance from the stem of the native English verb “to hinder”.
- er (ME, NE)** ( meaning “agent of the action”): writer, baker, reader;

- ess (ME)** (ultimately of Greek origin, used to derive names of female beings): princess, countess, baroness, shepherdess, goddess, murderess;
- et (ME)** (to derive nouns with diminutive meaning): coronet “small crown”; In some words the final consonant of the stem was -l: streamlet, ringlet, leaflet.
- ment (ME)** (meaning “result, object, state” < Fr.-ment): government, treatment, fulfilment, bereavement, amazement.

### Adjective-forming

- ede (OE)** (from the phrase “adjective stem+noun stem”, as in micelhēafdede “big-headed”; sometimes from a single substantive stem: hōcede “hooked”; healde “broken”).
- en (OE)** (accompanied by mutation, meaning “made of, consisting of” from noun stems): ȝylden “golden” (< ȝold “gold” < \* ȝuld); wyllen “woollen (from wulle “wool”); stænen “made of stone, stony” (from stān “stone”);
- feald (OE)** (cf. the verb fealdan “to fold”) - from numeral and adjective stems: þrīfeald “threefold”; seofonfeald “sevenfold”;
- full (OE)** (< full “full”) - from abstract noun stems: sorȝfull “sorrowfull”; synnfull “sinful”; carfull “full of care” (> careful);
- iȝ (OE)** (from noun stems, sometimes accompanied by mutation: hāliȝ “holy” (from hāl “whole”); mistiȝ “misty” (from mist “mist”); īsiȝ “icy” (from īs “ice”); bysiȝ “busy”;
- ihte (OE)** (from noun stems, usually accompanied by mutation: stænihte “stony” (from stān “stone”); ðyrnihte “thorny” (from ðorn “thorn” (< \* ðurn);

- isc (OE)** (usually accompanied by mutation) 1. mostly denoting nationality: Englisc “English”; Frencisc “French”; Welisc “Welsh”;
- 2. (> **ME -sh**: meaning “characteristic of, relating to”): bookish, childish.
- lēas (OE)** (< lēas “deprived”) from verb and noun stems: slæplēas “sleepless”; hōmlēas “homeless”;
- lic (OE)** (< līc “shape, body”) from noun and adjective stems: eorþlic “earthy”; frēondlic “friendly”; luflic “full of love, lovely”; dēadlic “deadly”;
- sum (OE)** (from noun, adjective and verb stems): sibbsum “peaceful” (from sibb “peace”); lanȝsum “irksome, dreary” (from lanȝ “long”); hīersum “obedient” (from hīeran “hear”);
- weard (OE)** (from noun, adjective and adverb stems meaning “direction”; > **ME, NE -ward**): hāmweard “homeward”; æfterweard “afterward” inneweard “internal”.
- able/-ible (ME,NE)** (meaning “capable, worthy of” <Fr. – **able**): admirable, legible, eatable, unbearable.

### Verb-forming

- ettan- (OE)**: sicettan “to sigh”; cohhetan “cough”
- lācan (OE)** (< lācian, –lāc): nēalācan “to approach”; winterlācan “to grow wintry”;
- sian (OE)** (from noun and adjective stems accompanied by mutation: blētsian “to bless” < \* blēdsian (from blōd “blood”- its original meaning was “to sprinkle with blood”); clāensian “cleanse” (from clāene - clean);
- ish (ME,NE)** (meaning “state, process” < Fr.): finish, punish, astonish;

## Adverb-forming

- e (OE)** (originated from the instrumental singular, neuter, strong declension): wide “widely”; dēope “deeply”  
fæste “fast”; hearde “hard”.
- lic(-lice) (OE)** (from adjectives): zesæliglic “blessed”;  
bealdlice “boldly”.

## LIST OF DERIVATIONAL PREFIXES

### Noun Prefixes

- fore- (OE)** (meaning “before”): foreweard “agreement”;
- 3e- (OE)** (meaning “collectivity”): 3efēra “fellow-traveller”;  
3efylc “troop” (cf. folc “people”);
- mis- (OE)** (meaning “negation or bad quality”): misdæd  
“misdeed”, mis3rētan “to insult”;
- ofer- (OE)** (meaning “above, beyond”) oferbru “eyebrow”.
- un- (OE)** (negative meaning): uncuþ “unknown”; undæd  
“crime, misdeed”; unar “dishonour”;

### Adjective Prefixes

- un-(OE)** (meaning negation): unripe “unripe”; unēaðe “not  
easy, difficult”;

### Verb Prefixes

- a- (OE)** (meaning “out of, from”): ārīsan “arise”; āwacan  
“awake”;
- be-/bi-(OE)** (meaning “around”): be3ān “go around”, “adore”;  
behōn “hang with”; besettan “besiege”; beþencan “think  
over”;

**fōr-(OE)** (meaning destruction or loss): fordōn “destroy”;  
forsettan “to obstruct”;

**Ʒe-(OE)** (originally meaning perfection of the action):  
Ʒefaran “to go”; Ʒebindan “to bind”; Ʒesēon “to see”;

**of-/æf-(OE)** (a reinforcing meaning): ofslēan “kill”; ofsendan  
“to set out for”;

**ofer- (OE)** ( meaning “above, beyond”): ofercuman “to  
overcome”; oferdrīfan “to drive”;

**on-(OE)** ( meaning “up, on”) onfīndan “to discover”; onsettan  
“to oppress”;

**tō- (OE)** (meaning destruction): tōniman “to separate”;  
tōsettan “to dispose”;

**un- (OE)** (meaning reversal of an action): unfealdan “to  
unfold”, unsettan “to put down”;

**under- (OE)** (meaning “beneath, lower”): underbezinnan “to  
undertake”, understandan “to understand”.

**wīþ- (OE)** (meaning “against”): wīþstandan “to withstand”;  
wīþsprecan “to contradict”.

**dis-/des-(ME)** (<Fr. a negative meaning): disappoint, disdain,  
disagree; dislike.

**en- (ME)** (<Latin: in-): encircle, encompass, endear;

**re- (ME)** (< Fr. re- meaning repetition of the action): re-write;  
relax, relay.

#### Adverb Prefixes

**a-/æȝ- (OE)** (with the meaning of the adverb “always, ever”):  
āhwæðer, æȝhwæðer “either”, āhwær, æȝhwær  
“everywhere”;

**wan- (OE)** (negative meaning): wanhāl “unwell”;

## SOME PROVERBS DISPLAYING THE SURVIVALS FROM OLD AND MIDDLE ENGLISH

### No article is used:

Agues come on horseback, but go away on foot.

- Qızdırma gələndə atlı olur, gedəndə piyada. ≅ Dərd gələndə xalvarla gəlir, çıxanda misqalla çıxır.

- Болезни входят пудами, а выходят золотниками.

Dog does not eat dog.

- İt iti yeməz; it it əti yeməz; ≅ it itin ayağını basmaz.

- Ворона вороне глаз не выклюет.

East or West – home is best.

- İstər şərq olsun, istər qərb, hər yerdən vətən yaxşıdır;

≅ Gəzməyə qərrib ölkə, ölməyə vətən yaxşı.

- В гостях хорошо, а дома лучше.

They are hand and glove.

≅ Onlar can bir qəfəsdədir.

≅ Их водой не разольешь. Два сапога пара.

To eat somebody out of house and home.

≅ Çörəyi dizi üstə olmaq;

- Разорить кого-либо, живя на его счет.

### The use of OE grammatical gender:

A cock is valiant on his own dunghill.

- Hər quş öz yuvasında ağadır;

- Всяк петух на своем пепелище хозяин;

Every dog has his day.

- Bizim də küçədə bayram olar. ≅ Hər itin öz günü var.

≅ Придет солнышко и к нашим окошечкам.

Every dog is valiant at his own door.

- Hər it öz qarısında hünərlidir; ≅ Hər kəs öz yerində qoçaqdır.

- В своем гнезду и ворон коршуну глаз выклюет.

### **The use of the verb in the singular:**

All is fish that comes to his net.

- Tora düşənin hamısı balıqdır; ≅ Balığın nə irisi, nə xırdası.

≅ Он ничем не брезгует; он из всего извлекает выгоду; доброму вору все впору;

All is well that ends well.

- Yaxşı (iş) odur ki, yaxşı qurtarır; (yəni hər işin təki axırı yaxşı olsun)

- Все хорошо, что хорошо кончается.

All that glitters (or glisters) is not gold.

- Hər parıldayan qızıl olmaz.

- Не все то золото, что блестит.

All is not lost that is in peril.

≅ Ümidi kəsmək olmaz.

- Не все то падает, что шатается.

### **The use of the second personal pronoun in the singular:**

Claw me, and I'll claw thee.

≅ Əl əli yuyar, əl də üzü.

≅ Услуга за услугу. Рука руку моет.

Don't have thy cloak to make when it begins to rain.

- Yağış yağmağa başlayanda özünə plaş tikmə (yəni hər işi öz vaxtında gör, sonra gec olar); ≅ Qar qarını alanda gec olar.

≅ Когда на охоту ехать, тогда и собак кормить.

Give every man thy ear, but few thy voice.

- Hamıya qulaq ver, amma az adama ağız ver; ≅ Min eşit, bir söylə.

- Слушай больше, говори меньше.

Tell me with whom thou goest and I'll tell thee what thou doest.

≅ Yoldaşını mənə göstər, sənin kim olduğunu deyim.

- Скажи мне, кто твой друг, и я скажу кто ты.



Measure thy cloth ten times, thou canst cut it but once.

- Yüz ölç, bir biç.

- Семь раз отмерь, а раз отрежь.

**No concord of the relative pronoun is used:**

All are not friends that speak us fair.

- Hər xoş danışan dost olmaz; ≅ Hər axan su şirin olmaz.

- Не всяк тот друг, кто нас хвалит.

He that shoots oft, at last shall hit the mark.

≅ Səbr edən fərəc tapar.

≅ Терпение и труд все перетрут.

He that will not when he may, when he will, he shall have nay.

- Hər kəs ki, imkan olanda istəmir, istəyəndə imkan tapmayacaqdır.

- Тот кто не хочет, когда может, уже не сможет.

He that has a great nose thinks everybody is speaking of it.

He that commits a fault thinks everyone speaks of it.

- Kar öz könlündəkini anlar; ≅ Sən ağacı götür, suçlu özünü bildirəcək; ≅ Xain xoflu olar.

- Тот у кого большой нос, думает, что все говорят только об этом. ≅ На воре шапка горит.

He that does not respect is not respected.

≅ Hərcayi sözün hərcayi də cavabı olar.

- Кто других не уважает, тот сам не заслуживает уважения.

He that dies pays all debts.

- Ölən bütün borcları ödəyər.

≅ С мертвого да с голого ничего не возьмешь.

He that always complains is never pitied.

- Daim şikayətlənən adama az rəhm edərlər.

- Того не жалеют, кто всегда плачет.

He that has a tongue in his mouth can find his way anywhere.

- Ağızında dili olan hər yanda yolu tapar. Soraq-soraq

ilə İsfahana gedərlər.  
 ≅ Язык везде дорогу укажет; язык до Киева доведет.  
 He that hides can find (hidens are good finders).  
 - Gizlədə bilən tərə da bilər.  
 - Тот кто умеет прятать, умеет и находить.  
 He that is afraid of wounds must not come near a battle.  
 - Yaralanmaqdan qorxan gərək döyüşə yaxın durmasın;  
 ≅ Qurddan qorxan qoyun saxlamaz.  
 ≅ Волков бояться – в лес не ходить.  
 He that comes first to the hill, may sit where he will.  
 ≅ Cürətli şəhər alar, kəmcürət küncdə qalar.  
 ≅ Кто зевает (опоздает), тот воду хлебает.  
 He that (who) hesitates is lost.  
 ≅ Götür-qoy adamı avara qoyar.  
 ≅ Колебание пагубно.  
 He that lies down with dogs must rise up with fleas.  
 ≅ Qurda qoşulan ulasın gərək.  
 ≅ С волками жить, по-волчьи выть.  
 He that lives with cripples learns to limp.  
 ≅ Qurda qoşulan ulamaq öyrənər.  
 ≅ С кем поведешься, от того и наберешься  
 He that mischief hatches, mischief catches.  
 ≅ Özgəyə quyu qazan, özü düşər.  
 ≅ Не рой другому яму, сам в нее попадешь  
 He that serves everybody is paid by nobody.  
 ≅ İki qibləyə namaz olmaz; İki yana bahən çaş olar.  
 ≅ Двум господам не служат.  
 He that will thrive must rise at five.  
 ≅ Ertəyə qalan, arxaıya qalar.  
 ≅ Кто встал пораньше, шагнул подальше.  
 None so blind as those that (who) won't see.  
 - Görmək istəməyən kordan da betərdir.  
 - Хуже всякого слепого тот, кто не хочет видеть.

None so deaf as those that won't hear.

- Eşitmək istəməyəən kardan da betərdir.

- Не тот глухой, кто глух, а тот кто не желает слышать.

They that have got good store of butter may lay it thick on their bread.

≅ Sūdünə görə mələ; gücünə bax, şələni bağla; ayağını yorğanına görə uzat.

≅ По приходу и держи расход.

### **The use of “self” as a word:**

Self is a bad counsellor.

≅ Məsləhətli don gen olar.

- Человек сам себе плохой советчик.

Self done is well done.

≅ «Özün bil»-də qal olmaz.

≅ Хорошо делается то, что делается своими руками.

Self comes first.

≅ Qarın qardaşdan irəlidir.

≅ Своя рубашка ближе к телу.

Self-praise is no recommendation.

- Öz-özünü tərifləmək zəmanət deyil. ≅ Ay öz-özünü bəyənməmiş, qoy səni el bəyənsin.

- (Самовосхваление еще не рекомендация). ≅ Не хвали себя сам, пусть люди тебя похвалят.

### **The use of the verb conjugation:**

He that diggeth a pit for another should look that he fall not into it himself.

- Yamanlıq etmək niyyətində olanın özü yamanlıq görər; ≅ Özgəyə quyu qazan özü düşər.

- Не рой другому яму - сам в нее попадешь.

He that feareth every bush must never go a-birding.

- Hər koldan qorxan quş ovuna getməz. ≅ Qurddan qorxan qoyun saxlamaz.

≅ Волков боятся - в лес не ходить.

Tell me with whom thou goest and I'll tell thee what thou doest.

- Yoldaşını mənə söylə, sənin kim olduğunu deyim.

- Назови товарища, скажу кто ты.

If an ass (or donkey) bray at you, don't bray at him.

≅ Dəliyə baş qoşma; ≅ Abrını gözlə abırsızdan.

≅ Свяжись с дураком, сам дураком станешь.

### **The use of a modal verb:**

As a man sows, so he shall reap.(=As you sow, so you shall mow). As you brew, so must you drink.

- Nə əkərsən, onu da biçərsən.

- Что посеешь, то и пожнешь.

He that is born to be hanged shall never be drowned.

- Yazıya rozu yoxdur; ≅ Tələdən qaçmaq olmaz.

≅ Чему быть того не миновать.

If the mountain will not come to Mahomet, Mahomet must go to the mountain.

- Dağ Məhəmmədin yanına gəlməsə, gərək Məhəmməd dağın yanına gedə.

-Если гора не идет к Магомету, то Магомет идет к горе.

If the blind lead the blind, both shall fall into the ditch.

- Kor koru gəzdirsə, hər ikisi xəndəyə düşər.≅ Ağası gülüm olanın başına külüm olar.

≅ Слепой слепому не указчик.

**The use of subjunctive:**

Home is home though it be never so homely.

≅ Gəzməyə qərrib ölkə, ölməyə vətən yaxşı.

≅ Дома и солома съедома.

No man loves his fetters, be they made of gold.

- Qandalaq qızıldan da olsa, yenə heç kimin xoşuna gəlməz.

- (Оковы никто не любит, будь они хоть из золота).

≅ Золотая клетка соловью не потеха; ≅ Больной и в золотой кровати не рад.

**The use of the prefix “-a” in the function of the preposition “on” :**

He that fears every bush must never go a-birding = go on birding.

- Hər koldan qorxan quş ovuna getməz; ≅ Sərçədən qorxan dağı əkməz. ≅ Qurddan qorxan qoyun saxlamaz.

- Тот, кто боится каждого куста, не должен ходить на ловлю птиц. ≅ Не ходи в лес, коли зайцев боится.

He that is long a-giving knows not how to give.

≅ Ölmə eşşəyim, yaz gələr, yonca bitinçə.

≅ Пока солнце взойдет, роса очи выест.

He that (or who) goes a-borrowing, goes a-sorrowing. (= He who goes on borrowing, goes on sorrowing).

- Borc alan özünə qəm-qüssə alır. ≅ Borca düşən dərdə düşər; ≅ Borclu ölməz, bənizi saralar.

≅ Кто любит занимать, тому не сдобровать.

**The omission of the preposition “of”:**

Half a loaf is better than no bread.

- Tamamilə çörəksiz olmaqansa, para kömbəyi olmaq yaxşıdır. ≅ Qazan olmayan yerdə güvəc də qazandır.

- Лучше полбуханки, чем ничего; Лучше мало, чем совсем ничего.

**The use of archaic forms:**

Amongst the blind the one-eyed man is king.

≅ Qazan olmayan yerdə güvəc də qazandır.

≅ На безрыбье и рак рыба; на безлюдье и Фома дворянин.

An ill stake standeth long.

≅ Çox kötüklər üstündə çox şumallar (çubuqlar) doğranıb.

≅ Скрипучее дерево два века стоит.

A soft answer turneth away wrath.

≅ Şirin dil ilanı yuvasından çıxardar;

≅ Ласковое слово и буйную голову смиряет.

As the old cock crows, so doth the young.

≅ Böyük danışanı kiçik götürər.

- Как старый петух кукарекает, так и молодой поет;

≅ Молодые учатся у старших.

He that hath an ill name is half hanged.

≅ Adın çixınca, canın çixsın.

≅ Бойся клеветника, как злого еретика.

He that hath thriven may lie till seven.

≅ Yatan aparmaz, yetən aparar.

≅ Кто поздно пришел, тому обглоданный мосол.

Judge not, that ye be not judged.

≅ Yaşa, qoy başqaları da yaşasin.

≅ Сам живи и другим не мешай.

Many a good cow hath (has) an evil (or a bad) calf.

≅ Oddan kül törəyər. Yaxşı inəyin bəzən pis bizovu olur.

≅ В семье не без урода.

Many a little makes a mickle.

≅ Dama-dama gəl olar.

≅ По капле и море собирается.

One woe doth tread upon another's heels.

≅ Xata xata üstündən gələr.

≅ Беда беду накликает.

Speech is silvern (silver), silence is golden (gold).

≅ Danışmaq gümüşdürsə, susmaq qızıldır.

≅ Слово-серебро, молчание-золото.

There is many a slip twixt (or between) the cup (or hand) and the lip.

≅ Bu xəmir hələ çox su aparar.

≅ Бабушка надвое сказала; бабушка гадала да на двое сказала.

### **The use of the negative form in the verb conjugation:**

He that fears death lives not.

≅ Ölümdən qorxan tez ölər.

≅ Смерти бояться – на свете не жить.

If you pay not a servant his wages, he will pay himself.

≅ Yaxşı at yemini artırar, pis at qamçısını.

≅ По заслугам и честь.

Look not a gift horse in the mouth.

- Bəy verən atın dişinə baxmazlar.

- Дареному коню в зубы не смотрят.

Make not your sauce till you have caught the fish.

≅ Arxı tullan, sonra barakallah alarsan.

≅ Не говори «гоп», пока не перепрыгнул.

Open not your door, when the devil knocks.

- Qapını şeytan döyəndə açma (şeytan səni yoldan çıxartmasın).

- Не открывай дверь, когда черт стучится.

We know not what is good until we have lost it.

- Yaxşı getməyincə, qədrini bilməz.

≅ Что имеем - не храним, потерявши - плачем.

Who has never tasted bitter knows not what is sweet.

≅ Pisi görməyən yaxşının qədrini bilməz; Heç vaxt

acıni dadmayan şirinin nə olduğunu bilməz.

- Не вкусив горького, не узнаешь и сладкого.

Waste not, want not.

≅ Bədxərclik etmə, möhtac qalma.

≅ Нет мотовства, нет и нужды.

### **The use of double negation:**

Nothing will come of nothing.

- Yoxdan heç nə olmaz.

- Из ничего ничего не выходит.

Old dog does not bark for nothing.

- Qoca körək əbəs yerə hülməz.

- Старый пес зря не лает.

### **The omission of the auxiliary verb:**

How goes the enemy?

≅ Saat neçədir?

≅ Сколько времени?

### **The use of inversion:**

After a storm comes a calm.

≅ Yaman günün ömrü az olar.

≅ На тучу будет и погода.

After rain comes fine weather.

≅ Hər gecənin bir gündüzü var.

- После дождика будет и солнышко.

As you brew, so must you drink.(= As you sow, so you shall mow).

≅ Nə əkərsən, onu da biçərsən.

≅ Что посеешь, то и пожнешь.

Easy come, easy go. Lightly come, lightly go. Fast found, fast lost.

≅ Hayla gələn vayla gedər.



- Как пришло, так и ушло.

Last come, last serve.

≅ Gec gələn qonaq öz kisəsindən ucuər.

≅ Кто смел, тот два съел.

Nothing seek, nothing find.

≅ Axtaran tapar.

≅ Кто ищет, тот всегда найдет.

Nothing venture, nothing have.

≅ Qurddan qorxan qoyun saxlamaz.

≅ Не рискуешь- не добудешь.

## THE LIFE OF UNUSUAL WORDS

### **Alarm**

It comes from the Latin *ad arma*, through the Italian *all'arme* “to the arms”.

### **All bosh**

Came into the language through the Oriental romances of James Morier, “The Adventure of Haiji Baba of Ispahan”, and “Ayesha”, where the word frequently appears. *Bosh* is Persian and Turkish, meaning ‘rubbish, nonsense’.

### **Alphabet**

Is a word unique in the English language, because it is purely Greek – a combination of the two Greek letters *alpha* (α) and *beta* (β).

### **Assassin**

The name given to a murderer. The origins of the name were a sect of Oriental religious and military fanatics founded in Persia in 1090 by Hasan ben Sabbah. They were known as Hashshashins. For two hundred years the sect were the terror of the world. Their name was derived from *hashish*, an intoxicating drink from which they drugged themselves before engaging in their massacres.

### **Barber**

The name for a hairdresser is not difficult to understand when it is remembered that the Latin for ‘beard’ is *barba*.

### **Chap**

Short for *chap-man*, one who sold goods in a cheap market. (See **Cheap**).

### **Cheap**

The interest in this word lies in the large number of words associated with it. A chap-man was an itinerant seller who peddled a stock of cheap goods (and, incidentally, gave us the surname Chapman). “Chop and change” comes from the

same source, meaning continually to reduce the first price demanded. Cheapside and Eastcheap in London reveal their origin in the word; and Chipping, as in Chipping Norton, and Chepstow, are similarly derived.

### **Cigarette**

The cigarette, as distinct from the cigar, is said to have been originated by artillerymen of Suleiman Bey in 1799 at the Siege of Acre. The big pipe which supplied the men with tobacco was destroyed by a shot. One of the men, famishing for a smoke, conceived the idea of rolling some tobacco in Indian paper which he was using for making gunpowder spills. The men liked the cigarette and continued with it after the siege. The first cigarette factory of any importance was established in St. Petersburg in 1850.

### **Coffee**

The origin is the Arabic *gahwah*. In Turkish, it is pronounced *kahveh*. It is said by Arabic lexicographers to have meant, originally, a drink of wine, and to be a derivative of a verb-root *gahiva*, meaning “to have no appetite”.

### **Costermonger**

Originally a seller of apples - from the *costard*, a large ribbed apple, and *monger* (Anglo-Saxon *mangian* ‘to trade’).

### **Dear, dearest**

The words, curiously enough, have two distinct and opposite meanings. One of them is connected with the Anglo-Saxon *derian*, which means ‘to hate’. It is in this sense that W. Shakespeare wrote in “Hamlet”: “Would that I had met my dearest foe in Heaven”. But in the sense of someone beloved, the derivation is the Saxon *deor* ‘rare’.

### **Divan**

Along, low, backless couch. The word is Turkish, signifying a Council of State or a Court of Justice. The Turkish councillors reclined on long couches ranged round the walls.

**Dog-days**

Are supposed to be the days of the year with the greatest heat. The term comes from the Romans, who called the six hottest weeks of the Summer *caniculares dies*. It was their theory that the dog-star (Sirius), rising with the sun, added to the heat, so that those days bore the combined temperature of the dog-star and the sun. The dog-days are from about July,3 to August,3.

**Ego, Egoism**

The word *ego* in Latin 'I'. It was introduced into philosophy by Descartes to denote the whole man-body and mind.

**Fare**

From the Anglo-Saxon *faran* 'to go'. It meant originally a journey for which passage money was paid; it has come to mean the money paid for the passage, and the person paying the money is also called the fare. The secondary meaning fare – 'food and provisions' – is difficult to understand.

**Farewell**

An expression of goodwill to a traveller starting out on a fare (journey) – the wish that the journey would end in all well (See **Fare** above).

**Fee**

This is another of those words which, like so many purely British names, spring from the soil with which, in olden times, all commerce in Britain was bound up. It comes from the Anglo-Saxon word *feoh* 'cattle', which in those days was one of the principal means of making payment. It is interesting to note, in passing, that the Latin *pecunia* 'money' was derived in a similar way from *pecus*, which also meant 'cattle', and *capital* and *capita* 'head of cattle'. Those were the days of barter, before money held the significance which it holds to-day.

**Field**

Was originally the Anglo-Saxon *feld*, a place from which the trees had been felled, or cleared. The origin is interesting, for the reader, turning over in his mind the large number of place-names with the suffix *field* or *feld*, can gain a good idea of the extent to which Britain was at one time forest land. Sheffield, Chesterfield, Earlsfield, are examples.

**Ganger**

The word is formed from the verb *to gang*, derived from the Anglo-Saxon *gangan* 'to go or to travel together'. The derivative is retained to-day in that a gang is a body of people who go together. Therefore, a ganger is the leader of the gang.

**Gipsy**

The name of the British description of the normal race. When they appeared in England, about the beginning of the sixteenth century, they were thought, from their dark skins, to have come from Egypt, and were therefore called *Egyptians*. This quickly became shortened to *gypcians*, and then came to *gypsies*.

**Glove**

Comes to us without any derivation from the Anglo-Saxon *glof* 'the palm of the hand'.

**Good-bye**

It is actually a contraction of *God be with you*; the French say *adieu* (*à Dieu* – I commend you to God).

**Husband**

A husband has somewhat declined in social standing from the original. In Anglo-Saxon days *hus* was a house, and *bondi* was Norse for a freeholder or yeoman. A husband was a householder from his position as head of the household. And so, the term came to be applied to a man joined to a woman in marriage, he being, naturally, the head of his household. But, in the true sense of the word, a man could in Anglo-Saxon days be the "husband" of his mother, or sister, so long as he was the

head of the house.

### **Iceberg**

Means ice mountain, the word *beorh*, or *berg*, being Anglo-Saxon for a hill, or mountain.

### **King**

In the Anglo-Saxon tongue *cyn* meant 'people' or 'a nation'. The suffix *-ing* meant 'of', in the sense of 'son of'. Thus, put together, there emerged *cyning*, son of the nation, or of the people meaning 'king'.

### **Kith and kin**

It is a little difficult to reconcile the joining of the two words for though they have a "kindred" meaning they are, at the same time, quite distinct. *Kith* comes from the Anglo-Saxon *cunnan* 'to know' (cuð 'known') meaning in a fact an acquaintance or a friend, while *kin* is derived from the Anglo-Saxon *cynn* 'people', in its turn derived from *gan* 'to beget', thus meaning relationship.

### **Knave**

How the word evolved into a term for a rascal is a mystery, for the Anglo-Saxon *knave* was a boy (the German *Knabe* still is), especially a boy in someone's employ. And in "Piers Plowman" (1400) we see: "He bid his knave knele". At the time that a knave was a boy servant, so was a knight a man servant (as, again, the German *Knecht* still is). Now, *knight* has become an honour, and *knave* a dishonour.

### **Know thyself**

The advice of the Oracle at Delphi, and attributed to many of the great philosophers of Greece.

### **Lady**

The word is, literally, the bread-kneader: it is derived from the Anglo-Saxon *hlæf-dize*, *læ-dize* (*hlæf* 'a loaf of bread', *dize* 'knead'). Girls, in those days, were literally *spinsters*, while a *daughter* can be traced back to Sanskrit origin in words meaning 'the milker'. The duty of the sons of

the house was to perpetuate the family, as will be noticed from the origin of the word, the Sanskrit *sunu*, derived from *su* 'to beget'.

### **Lent**

It is a shortened form of *lencten*, the Anglo-Saxon word for Spring. From the same root comes the word *lengthening*; and *lencten* marked for the Anglo-Saxon the beginning of the lengthening of the days.

### **Mamma**

A child's first name for its mother. The word is both Greek and Latin for "breast". All animals that are suckled at the breast are mammals. The mamma of mammals is a conglomerate gland secreting milk.

### **May**

Gardeners will be interested in the origin of the name of this gardening month. The budding of plants at this time of the year led to the Romans calling it *magius*, which was later shortened to *Maius*, from the Sanskrit *mah* 'to grow'. Later still, however, it was held sacred to Maia, mother of Mercury, and sacrifices were offered on the first day of the month.

### **Mediterranean**

The name means the sea in the middle of the earth, from the Latin *medius* 'middle', *terra* 'land'.

### **Mere (Moor, More)**

Frequently found as component parts of place-names. The word means a lake, or a marsh, of Anglo-Saxon times. Windermere, Dartmoor, Blackmore are examples.

### **Midwife**

Not from the Medieval English *mede* meaning 'reward', and *wife*; but from the Anglo-Saxon *mid* 'with', and *wife* 'woman' – the nurse who is with the mother in her labour.

### **Monger**

Is derived from the Medieval English *mong* 'a mixture', 'an association' and the Anglo-Saxon *mangere* 'one who

trades'. Thus a monger in those days was one who traded, or sold, a mixture of commodities, or commodities on association with one another.

### **Naughty**

It is composed of the Anglo-Saxon *na* 'not' and *wiht* 'thing', and originally *naught* and *naughty* meant worthless, good for nothing. By Shakespeare's time the word had come to mean "corrupt" or "evil". In Act V of the "Merchant of Venice", he refers to "a good deed in a naughty (evil) world".

### **Nephew**

Strange though it seems, the word comes from the Latin *nepos* 'a grandson'. It meant grandchild, or descendant in Early English. Niece, from the Latin *neptis*, meant a granddaughter.

### **Opportune**

Portunus was the old God of harbours. The harbour was called, in Latin, *portus*. Taking the prefix *ob-*, we get *obportunus* 'before the harbour God'. In other words, such an arrival was the arrival safely in harbour.

### **Orchard**

In Anglo-Saxon *ortgeard*, parallel to the Gothic *aurtigards*, meant garden. The first element of both is considered to be the Latin *hortus* (later *ortus*) 'a garden'.

### **Oxford**

Is called in Domesday Book *Oxeneford* – a ford for the passage of oxen across the River Isis.

### **Parasol**

An Italian word; but the Latin borrowed it from the Greek *para* 'beyond' and Latin *sol* 'the sun' – 'beyond' (out of) the sun.

### **Parlour**

From the French *parler* 'to talk'. It originally designated a room set apart in a monastery where conversation was allowed and visitors admitted.



**Pedagogue**

The word, to-day, means a school teacher and particularly one with dogmatic views. The original pedagogue was a slave, whose duty it was to attend his master's son to school and home again, from the Greek *pais* 'boy' and *agein* 'to lead'.

**Pen, pencil**

A pen was in Latin *penna*, meaning 'a feather'. The earliest pens were quills – feathers cut into the form of pens with a pen-knife. A pencil in Latin was *penicellum* 'a paintbrush'. This will come as no surprise to artists, since their brushes are still referred to in works on art as "pencils".

**Perfume**

Its derivation is the Latin *per fumum* 'from smoke'. The original perfume was obtained from the combination of aromatic wood and gums to counteract the offensive smell of burning flesh of old-time sacrifices.

**Queue**

French word, meaning 'tail'.

**Quick**

The real meaning of the original *quick* (*cwic*, Anglo-Saxon), is seen in the quick-set hedge – one of live wood, not dead palings; and in the Bible *quick* is also used as 'living' – "the quick and the dead".

**Quintessence** (meaning the most important features of something)

Is generally used as a word meaning 'the best of anything'; 'perfect'. Its Greek meaning is 'fifth essence'. The Ancients (of Greece) knew and acknowledged four elements only – earth, air, fire and water. To these the philosophers added an element pure and subtle, naturally bright and incorruptible, and situated above the four terrestrial elements. It was named *ether*, the Fifth Essence.

**Salt**

From the Anglo-Saxon *sealt*. The Norman word for the saltstand was *saliere*, from which we get our salt-cellar. Salad, too, comes from salt; it was originally green vegetables seasoned with salt, the word *salad* meaning ‘salted’.

**Shire**

The name we use for a country to-day meant ‘sheared-off’ from the Anglo-Saxon *scir* ‘office, government’, in conjunction with *scirian* ‘to allot’. When the Saxon Kings appointed an Earl, they gave him a shire, *scir*, of land to govern. Thus we get shire as ‘acre’. The Norman Conquest saw the title of Earl supplanted by that of Count, when the shire became ‘county’.

**Spinster**

When the word used in Middle Dutch and the Frisian language, a *spinster* was exactly what it spells – one who *span*. The women of the Anglo-Saxon household span, in winter, the fleeces which had been taken from the sheep during the summer. That was their expected task. It was a recognized axiom that no woman of that period was fitted to be a wife until she had spun for herself her body, table and bed linen. Thus the task of spinning was generally delegated to the unmarried women of the house who were the spinners or the spinsters.

**Step-father, step-mother**

A prefix indicating that the person referred to is not a blood relation, but a relative only by marriage. *Step*, in this meaning, comes from the Anglo-Saxon *steop*, which is connected with *astieped*, meaning ‘bereaved’.

**Stoke**

This suffix at the end of town names, such as Basingstoke, Bishopstoke, means that the original town was a stockaded place (i.e. defended by a barrier of stakes as well as pikes). It is of Anglo-Saxon origin.

**Sunday**

So called because the Ancients dedicated the day, the first of the week, to the Sun, as Monday was dedicated to the Moon.

**Surname**

From the Latin *super* (through the French *sur*) “over, above” and “*nomen* “name”. Christian names were held first in Britain, and surnames did not develop until somewhere around the tenth century. Thus John, who earned his living by shoeing horses, became in time John Smith, and his son became Johnson. Surname means “the other”, or “over” name to the Christian name.

**Walnut**

Has nothing to do with walls. The Anglo-Saxon word for foreign was *wealh*, and the Middle English word for “walnut” was *walnote*, from *wealh* and *hnut*. The walnut was so called by the ancestors in explanation of its foreign origin; it came from Persia.

**Window**

This is a word which, although the object it describes has changed, the word itself remains unchanged. *Window* comes from the Old Norse *vindauga* – *vindr* “wind” and *auga* “eye” making “wind’s eye”. It dates back to those days before the introduction of glass when windows were openings in a wall and were uncovered except for shutters or curtains. They also served the purpose of giving air to the room.

**Zero**

The word is Arabic for “nothing”; it is a cipher. Zero point in time is twelve o’clock midday, the time at which the twenty-four hour clock begins the day.

**AN EXCERPT FROM ÆLFRIC'S COSMOLOGY  
(OLD ENGLISH TEXT)  
Ælfric's Views on the Celebration of "A New Year"**

Ælfric ( 955-1010) is one of a handful of Anglo-Saxon authors whose name is known to us. He was a priest and a monk who lived all his life in Wessex and was influenced by the monastic and intellectual revival presided over by Æthelwold. After teaching in the monastic school in Winchester, he proceeded to the monastery at Cerne Abbas, Dorset, where his Catholic Homilies were written between about 986 and 992. In 1005 he became abbot of the new monastery at Eynsham in Oxfordshire. Ælfric lived in a time of reconstruction, for which Alfred's military and cultural efforts and Æthelstan's victory at Brunanburh had provided the foundation. Wessex had gained dominance and imposed some unity upon England.

Æthelwold, to whose school Ælfric belonged, had a particular interest in literacy, and his Winchester school developed certain characteristic verbal choices which are exemplified in Ælfric's writings. More significantly, a relatively consistent way of writing West Saxon was developed, which, through its adoption by royal clerks, became used beyond the West Saxon dialect area by others writing in English.

This excerpt contains the account of creation given in Ælfric's *De Temporibus Anni*, a work completed around 993 when he was at Cerne Abbas, and which survives in eight manuscripts. Knowledge of cosmology was introductory to an understanding of astronomy, and this was of importance in medieval monasteries since the computation of the calendar was based upon it, when in turn made possible the certain identification of religious feast days. Characteristically, Ælfric appends an allegorical and moral interpretation to the natural

science he recounts. This piece of scientific writing illustrates quite well some of the features of Ælfric's earlier prose style. Ælfric's artistry, in keeping with his concern to write in the simple style which he thought appropriate for instruction, seeks to be unobtrusive. His work is none the less constructed with considerable skill. This excerpt is written in standard West Saxon, which is the language of most extant Old English literature.

Wē habbað oft zehýred þæt men hātað þysne dæg zēares dæg, swylce þēs fyrrest sý on zēares ymbryne; ac wē ne zemetað nāne zeswutelunze on crīstenum bōcum, hwi þēs dæg tō zēares anzinne zeteald sý. Ða ealdan Rōmāni, on háðenum dazum, onzunnon þæs zēares ymbryne on ðysum dæze; and ðā Ebrēiscan lēoda on lenctenlīcere emnihte; ðā Grēciscan on sumerlīcum sunstede; and þā Egyptiscan ðēoda onzunnon heora zēares zetel on hærfešte. Nū onzinð ūre zerīm, æfter Rōmāniscre zesetnyse, on ðysum dæze, for nānum zodcundlicum zescēade, ac for ðām ealdan zewunan. Sume ūre ðēninzbēc onzinnað on Aduentum Domini; nis ðeah þær forðý ðæs zēares ord, ne ēac on ðisum dæze nis mid nānum zescēade; þeah ðe ūre zerīm-bēc on þissere stōwe zeedlācan. Rihtlicost bið zedūht þæt þæs zēares anzinn on ðām dæze sý zehæfd, þe sē ælmihtiza Scyppend sunnan and mōnan, and steorran, and ealra tīda anzinn zesette; þæt is on þām dæze þe þæt Ebrēisce folc heora zēares zetel onzinnað; swā swā sē heretoza Moyses on ðām álicum bōcum āwrāt. Witodlice God cwæð tō Moysen be ðām mōnðe, "Ðēs mōnað is mōnða anzinn, and hē bið fyrrest on zēares mōnðum". Nū hēold þæt Ebrēisce folc ðone forman zēares dæg on lenctenlīcere emnihte, forðan ðe on ðām dæze wurdon zēarlīce tīda zesette.

Sē eahtetēoða dæg þæs mōnðes þe wē hātað

Martius, ðone zē hātað Hlȳda, wæs sē forma dæg ðyssere worulde. On ðām dæge worhte zod lēoht, and merizen, and æfen. Ðā ēodon þrȳ dazas forð būton tīda zemetum; forðan þe tunzla nāeron zesceapene, ær on þām fēorðan dæge. On ðām fēorðan dæge zesette sē Ælmihtiza ealle tunzla and zēarlīce tīda, and hēt þæt hī wáeron tō tǣcne dazum and zēarum. Nū onzynnad þā Ebrēiscan heora zēares anzinn on þām dæge þe ealle tīda zesette wáeron, þæt is on ðam fēorðan dæge woruldlīcere zesceapenyssse; and sē lārēow Bēda telð mid micclum zescēade þæt sē dæg is XII.KL. Aprilis, ðone ðæg wē frēolsiað þām hālzan were Benedicte tō wurðmynte, for his micclum zedincðum. Hwæt ēac sēo eorðe cȳð mid hire cīðum, þe ðonne zeedcuciað, þæt sē tīma is þæt rihtlīcoste zēares anzinn, ðe hī on zesceapene wáeron.

Nū wizliað stunte men menizfealde wizelunza on ðisum dæge, mid micclum zedwylde, æfter háðenum zewunan, onzēan heora crīstendōm, swylce hī mazon heora līf zelenzan, oþþe heora zesundfulnyssse, mid þām ðe hī zremiað þone ælmihtizan Scyppend. Sind ēac maneza mid swā micclum zedwylde befanzene, þæt hī cēpað be ðām mōnan heora fær, and heora dáda be dazum, and nellað heora ðinz wanian on mōnan-dæg, for anzinne ðáere wucan; ac sē mōnan-dæg nis nā fyrrest daza on þáere wucan, ac is sē oðer. Sē sunnan-dæg is fyrrest on zesceapenyssse and on endebyrdnyssse, and on wurðmynte. Seczað ēac sume zedwæsmenn þæt sum orfcyn sȳ þe man blētsizan ne sceole, and cweðað þæt hī þurh blētsunze misfarað, and ðurh wyrizunge zedēoð, and brūcað þonne Godes zife him on tēonan, būton blētsunze, mid dēofles āwyrizednyssse. Ælc blētsunz is of Gode, and wyrizunz of dēofle. God zescēop ealle zesceafta, and dēofol nāne zesceafta scyppan ne mæg ac hē is yfel tihtend, and lēas wyrrencend, synna ordfruma, and sāwla bepáccend.

Ðā zesceafta ðe sind þwyrlice zedūhte, hi sind tō wrace zesceapene yfel-dædum. Oft hālige men wunodon on wēstene betwux rēðum wulfum and lēonum, betwux eallum dēorcynne and wyrmcynne, and him nān ðinz derian ne mihte; ac hi tōtæron þā hyrnedan næddran mid heora nacedum handum, and þā micclan dracan ēadelice acwealdon, būton ælcere dare, þurh zodes mihte.

Wā ðām men þe bricð zodes zesceafta, būton his blētsunze, mid dēofellicum wizlunzum, þonne sē ðeoda lārēow cwæð, Paulus "swā hwæt swā zē dōð on worde, oððe on weorce, dōð symle on Drihtnes naman, þancizende þām ælmihtizan Fæder þurh his Bearn." Nis þæs mannes crīstendōm nāht, þe mid dēoflicum wizlunzum his līf ādrīhð; hē is zehīwod tō crīstenum men, and is earm hæðenzylða; swā swā sē ylca apostol be swylcum cwæð, "Ic wēne þæt ic swunce on ýdel, ðāðā ic ēow tō Gode zebīzde: nū zē cēpað dazas and mōnðas mid ýdelum wīzlunzum."

Is hwæðere æfter zecynde on zesceapennysse ælc lichamlīc zesceaft ðe eorðe ācend fulre and mæzenfæstre on fullum mōnan þonne on zewanedum. Swā ēac trēowa, zif hī bēoð on fullum mōnan zehēawene, hī bēoð heardran and langfærran tō zetimbrunze, and swīðost, zif hī bēoð unsæpize zeworhte. Nis ðis nān wizlunz, ac is zecyndelīc þinz þurh zesceapennysse. Hwæt ēac sēo sá wunderlice zepwærlæcð þæs mōnan ymbrene; symle hī bēoð zefēran on wæstme and on wanunze. And swā swā sē mōna dæzhwomlice fēower pricon lator ārīst, swā ēac sēo sá symle fēower pricon lator flēowð."

Uton besettan ūrne hiht and ūre zesálda on þæs ælmihtizan Scyppendes forescēawunze, sē ðe ealle zesceafta on ðrim ðinzum zesette, þæt is on zemetē, and on zetele, and on hefe. Sý him wuldor and lof ā on ēcnysse. Amen.

## **Translation of the Excerpt into Azerbaijani**

### **ƏLFRİK VƏ ONUN «YENİ İLİN BAYRAM EDİLMƏSİ» HAQQINDA HEKAYƏTİ Təxm. 1000 il**

Biz həmişə eşitmişik ki, insanlar həmin günü bahar günü hesab etmişlər, belə ki, həmin gün ilin dövrü hərəkətinin ilk günüdür; lakin biz xristian kitablarında bu haqda heç bir məlumata təsadüf etmirik – axı nəyə görə həmin gün ilin başlanğıcı hesab edilir.

Qədim Romada .....ilin dövrü hərəkətinin başlanğıcı həmin gündən hesab edilirdi. Yəhudilər də baharı ilin başlanğıcı kimi bayram edirdilər. Yunanlar yeni ili yay ayı gündönümündən hesab edirdilər. Misirlilər ilin başlanğıcının payızda olmasını söyləyirlər.

İndi o gün haqqında Romalıların fikrindən sonra, biz demək istəyirik ki, o gün heç bir dini mahiyyət daşımır, çünki o çox qədim bir adətdir.

Bizim bəzi dini ilahiyyət kitablarımız «Adentum Domini» (milad pəhrizi) ilə başlayır. Lakin orada həmin ilin nə başlanğıcı, nə də həmin günün mahiyyəti (fərqi) izah olunmur; baxmayaraq ki, bizim dini kitablarımızda məkan təkrarən göstərilir. Tamamilə doğru düşünüldü ki, ilin başlanğıcı həmin gündən başlayır və Ulu Tanrı günəşin, ayın, ulduzların və bütün aləmin başlanğıcını xəlq edib.

Yəhudilər də ilin başlanğıcının həmin gündən başladığını söyləyiblər; belə ki, Vaiz Moisey dini kitabda yazmışdır: Həqiqətən də Allah Moiseyə həmin ay haqqında belə ərz etmişdi: «Bu ay, ayın başlanğıcıdır və o ilin ən birinci ayıdır». İndi belə qeyd edilir ki, yəhudi xalqı bunu ilin ilk günü kimi bayram edir; çünki məhz həmin gün ilin dövrü hərəkətini etmiş, başlanğıcı qoymuşdu. Bu ayın 18-ci gününü biz Mart, siz isə Hluda (yəni gurultulu, səs-küylü ay – izahı bizimdir) adlandırırırsınız, bu bütün dünyanın başlanğıc günü olmuşdur.



Tanrı həmin gündə nuru (ışığı), səhəri və axşamı xəlq etmişdir. Sonra bundan vaxt meyarı kimi üç gün də keçdi. Həmin o dördüncü günə kimi heç bir səma cismi xəlq edilməmişdi. Ulu Tanrı bütün ulduzları və ilin dövrü hərəkətini həmin o dördüncü günü və onları əlamətlərinə görə gün və il adlandırdı. Ona görə də yəhudilər ilin başlanğıcını həmin gündən hesab edirlər, çünki həmin gün bütün kainat (aləm, bəlkə bütün vaxt, yoxsa aləmin başlanğıcı) xəlq edilmişdi. Elə həmin o dördüncü günü bütün dünyəvi yaradılış baş vermişdi və ustad Beda böyük bir inamla söyləyir ki, həmin gün XII Kl. Aprilidir (yəni 21 martdır). Ona görə də biz o müqəddəs ustad Benedikti hörmətlə yad edir, onun böyük əzəmətinə şərəflər olsun!

Əgər torpaq öz cücərmiş toxumu ilə tanınırsa, ilin dövrü hərəkəti doğrudan da yaranmış olduğu ilin başlanğıcı ilə müəyyən olunur.

Bütpərəstlik adətlərindən sonra, xristianlığın əleyhinə olaraq bəzi sarsaq adamlar həmin gün haqqında çoxlu xülyalar yürüdərək söyləyirlər ki, onlar öz həyatlarını uzatmağı və onun çiçəklənməsini bərqərar etməyə qadirdirlər, bununla da onlar Ulu Tanrını qəzəbləndirə bilərlər. Onların ayın yolunu və gündüzlər hərəkətini müşahidə etməkdə çoxlu miqdarda səhvləri vardır, bazar ertəsinə həftənin başlanğıcı hesab etdiklərindən, o gündə heç bir şeyin öz gücünü azaltmasını istəyirlər. Lakin bazar ertəsi həftənin birinci günü deyildir, o ikinci gündür. Bazar günü yaranışına, ardıcıl düzülüşünə və əzəmətinə görə birinci gündür. Həm də bəzi sarsaq adamlar deyirlər ki, insanların bəzi heyvanlara rəhmi gəlməməlidir və ərz edirlər ki, onlar bu mərhəmət sarıdan cəfa çəkirlər və Allah onlara xeyir-dua əvəzinə dərd və iblisin lənətini verir. Hər bir xeyir-dua (rəhm) Allahdan, lənət isə iblisdəndir. Allah bütün dünyanı xəlq edib, şeytan isə heç bir aləm yarada bilmir, çünki o, çox mənfur fitnəkardır, saxtakardır, günahkardır və yalançıdır.

Bu aləm yanlış düşünülmüşdür, elə bil ki, pis əməllərdən qisas almaq məqsədilə yaradılmışdır. Çox zaman

müqəddəs adamlar biyabanlarda yırtıcı canavarlar və şirlər arasında, vəhşi heyvanlar və gürzələr arasında məskunlaşırlar və heç nə onlara xəttər yetirə bilmir; lakin onlar yalın əllə divləri parçalayır və bu nəhəng əjdahalar çox asanlıqla məhv olurlar; ancaq hər bir xəttanı Allah göndərə bilər.

Heyhat, bəzi adamlar Allahın xeyir-duasından başqa, onun yaratdıqlarını şeytanın uydurması ilə pozurlar; bununla əlaqədar baş vaiz ərz etdi: «Paulz sən sözlə, yaxud zəhmətlə nə edirsənsə et, lakin həmişə onu Tanrının adı ilə et! O qadir Ataya onun vasitəsilə minnətdarlıq et!»

Onda xristianlığa aid heç bir şey yoxdur, onun real həyatı şeytan xülyaları ilə çulğalanmışdır, o xristian kimi xəlq edilmişdir, lakin o, miskin bir büt-pərəstdir; beləliklə, apostol belə ərz etmişdi, «mənim fikrim belədir ki, mən əbəs yerə zəhmət çəkirəm, bir halda ki, mən də, sən də Allaha tabeyik. İndi sən (siz) əbəs yerə günlərlə və aylarla xülyalara dalırsan (dalırsınız)».

Məgər təbii yaradılışdan sonra yerdəki hər bir maddi aləm tam bədirlənmiş ay və sonra onun qabırğalarının sökülməsi dövründə tamamilə və güclü şəkildə canlanmırmı?

Həmçinin əgər hər bir ağac tutarsız (zəif) yaradılıbsa və əgər o bədirlənmiş ay zamanı budanırsa, o çox tez güclü, davamlı və bərk artacaq.

Bu heç də uydurma deyildir, bu xəlqətmə ilə əlaqədar olan çox təbii bir haldır. Bu necə olur ki, hər bir dəniz ayın hərəkəti ilə çox gözəl uyğunlaşır, ay daima öz formasını artıraraq, yaxud da əksildərək, hərəkət edir və beləliklə, ay hər gün yavaş-yavaş dörd burum yuxarı qalxır, həmçinin hər bir dəniz də həmişə dörd burum (yəni qabarır və çəkilir - qeyd bizimdir) vuraraq yavaş-yavaş axır.

Bizim sevincimiz və bizim xoşbəxtliyimiz kənardan əvvəlcədən Ulu Tanrı tərəfindən müəyyən olunmuşdur, beləliklə, bütün aləm (dünya) 3 şeydən – ölçü, kəmiyyət və çəkiddən təşkil edilmişdir.

Əbədi eşq və əhsən olsun Ona!

Amin.

**Essential Vocabulary of the Text**  
**Mətnə işlənən qədim ingilis sözlərinin lüğəti**

**Æ, æ**

*ā* adv. nə vaxtsa, həmişə, həmişəlik ācennan w.v. I 1. törəmək, doğulmaq; 2. nəticə vermək.  
*acwealdon* See ācwellan  
*ācwellan* w.v.I 1. öldürmək, məhv etmək; 2. dağıtmaq Mid. E. acwellen  
*adrīhð* həqiq, ədalətli, düz, düzgün  
*anzinn* n, neut. (a) 1. başlanğıc; 2. zirəklik, təşəbbüskarlıq, tədbirlilik, bacarıqlıq; M.E. angin  
*apostol* n.m. (a) apostol (həvariyyun, əshabə İsanın əfsanəvi 12 həvariyyunundan biri)  
*ā-risan* str. v.I. yuxarı qalxmaq, yüksəlmək: See rīsan æfen, ēfen n.m. (jā) ərəfə; axşam; Mid. E. even Mod. E. even: eve  
*æfter* prp. sonra; Mid. after; Mod. E. after  
*ælc* < æ(3hwi)lc prn. hər cür; hər bir kəs; Mid. E. aiggwile, ælich; Mod. E. each  
*ælmīhtiz - myhtiz* qadir, qüdrətli, hökmranı  
*ær* I adv. əvvəl, əvvəllər; II prp. qədər, a...ə; əvvəl; Mod. E. ere  
*āwyri zednys* n. fem. (jō) lənət, qarğış

**B, b**

*be-, bi-* pref. Mid. E. be-; Mod.E. be- be, bi pref. yanında, yaxınlığında, yanaşı, yanından, boyunca; yaxın; əlaqədar olaraq; Mod. E. by  
*befangen* See befōn  
*befōn* w.v.VII 1. məruz qalmaq; 2. əhatə etmək; daxil etmək; 3. bürümək, çulğamaq; 4. çevirmək, döndərmək; *wordum*  
*befōn* söyləmək, nəql etmək  
*blētsian, blēdsian, blædsian* w.v.I, xeyir-dua vermək (etmək),

uğurlamaq, uğur diləmək; Mid. E. bletsian; Mod. E. to bless  
*blētsunz* n. fem. (ō) xeyir-dua, uğurlama; Mid. E. bletsing;  
 Mod. E. blessing  
*bēon, bion* supp. V. 1. olmaq, mövcud olmaq; 2. böyümək,  
 artmaq; 3. olmaq; 4. baş vermək; Mid. E. bēon; Mod. E. to be,  
 been  
*Benedicte* Benedikt (monastr və şəxs adı)  
*besettan* w.v. I. 1.əhatəyə almaq, dövrələmək; əhatə etmək,  
 mühasirəyə almaq, mühasirə etmək ; 2. tutmaq; yerləşdirmək;  
 Mid. E. bi-setten; Mod. E. beset  
*bið* See *bēon*.  
*bōc* n. fem. (i), pl. *bēc* 1. kitab; 2. Tövrat; 3. sənəd; 4. fərman  
*bricð* (< *zē-breccan*)  
*(zē-)breccan* w.v.IV 1.sınmaq, sındırmaq; pozmaq, riayət  
 etməmək, əməl etməmək; 2. tutmaq, işğal etmək (şəhəri); 3.  
 zərər yetirmək; Mid. E. breken “sındırmaq, dağıtmaq”; Mod.  
 E. to break  
*brūcan* w.v.II 1.istifadə etmək; 2.sahib olmaq; 3. həzz almaq,  
 ləzzət almaq, zövq almaq, nəşələnmək  
*būtan, būton* conj. lakin, amma, ancaq; Mid. E. būten, but;  
 Mod. E. but  
*zēbiðde* See (*zē-*)bi (e)zan, -býzan, -bēzan, (*zē-*), bi (e)zan  
 w.v.I. 1. əymək, bükmək, qatlamaq; 2. dönmək, döndərmək; 3.  
 tabe etmək, alçaltmaq; 4. çevirmək, döndərmək, .....şəklinə  
 salmaq, .....halına salmaq; 5. təhrif etmək; Mid. E. bēzen,  
 býzen «əymək, endirmək»

## C,c

*cēpan* w.v. 1. > kepen; keep. OE axtarmaq, tapmağa çalışmaq;  
 cəhd etmək, arzulamaq  
*crisendom* n., m (a) xristianlıq, xristian aləmi; Mid. E.  
 cristendom; Mod. E. christendom  
*(zē-)cynd* n. fem.(ō) 1. mənşə; 2. nəsl; 3. doğum; 4. təbiət; 5.  
 soy, ailə; Mid.E. kynde. nəsl, soy, təbiət; Mod.E. kind ;  
*(zē-)cynde* adj.1. təbii; 2. irsi; anadan gəlmə; fitri

*cwæð* See (*ʒe-*)*cwæðan*

(*ʒe-*)*cwæðan* w.v. V. demək, söyləmək; elan etmək; əmr etmək; Mid. E. *cwæðen*; Mod. E. (arx.) *quoth*  
(*ye-*)*cyndelic* adj. təbii, anadangəlmə kimi

## D, d

*dæȝ* n.,m (a) 1. gün; vaxt; to *dæȝ(e)* adv. bu gün; Mid. E. *dæi*; M.E. *day*

(*ʒe-*) *dæȝhwāmlīce* adv. gündəlik, hər günkü; *dæd(e)* n fem. (i) iş, hərəkət, əməl

*dēofol* n m; neut(a) şeytan, iblis; Mid. E > *dēofel*; Mid. E. *devil*,

*deorcynn* n neut. (ja) heyvan, vəhşi

(*ʒe-*)*dōn* irreg. v. V. 1. etmək; 2. yaratmaq, icra etmək, yerinə yetirmək; 3. məcbur etmək; 4. saxlamaq, qorumaq; 5. hesab etmək; 6. əldə etmək; 7. gəlmək, varid olmaq; Mid. E. *doon* 1. etmək; 2. qoymaq, taxmaq; Mid. *to do, done*

(*ʒe-*)*derian* w.v. I dağıtmaq, zərər yetirmək, zərər vurmaq, ziyan vermək; Mid. E. *derien* yaralamaq; ziyan vurmaq

*draca* n., m.(n) əjdaha, odpüskürən əjdaha; Mid. E. *drake*

(*ʒe-*)*dwæsmann* n. m. (i) axmaq, səfeh, gic; cahil

(*ʒe-*)*dwylđ, -dwi(e)ld* n. neut (jā) 1. səfehlik, axmaqlıq, giclik; 2. səhv; 3. xürafat, mövhumat

## E, e

*ēac* I adv. həmçinin, hətta, daha çox; *ēac swā, ēac swilce* həmçinin, hətta, eyni şəkildə; *ēac þon* başqa; eyni zamanda, ...kimi; II prep. əlavə olaraq, ilə; Mid. E. *ēac*; Mod. E. (arch) *eke*

*ēahta* num. səkkiz; Mid. E. *eahte, ahte*; Mod. E > *eight*

*eahtēoða* num. on səkkiz; Mid. E. *eiȝte-tēoþe*; Mod. E.

*eighteenth*

*eal* See *eal*(1)

(*e*)*ald* adj. qədim, qoca; köhnə; əvvəlki; Mid. E. eald; Mod. E. old  
*ealda* n., m. (n) qoca adam; başçı, rəhbər  
*eal(l)* I prn. hamı, hər bir kəs; hər şey; eal swa məhz, həmçinin. elə bil ki; mid ealle tamamilə, bütövlükdə; II adv. tamamilə, bütün, bütövlükdə, hamılıqla, büt-bütün; III adj. bütöv; dolu; bütün; Mid. E. al; Mod. E. all  
*eal(l) mihtʒ* See *ælmihʒ*  
*ēaðe, yðe, ēðe* adj. yüngül; asan; xoş; hamar; Mid. E. ēað yüngül; Mod. E. easy ēaðelice adv. yüngül; asan  
(*ʒe-*)*edlæcan* w. v. I təkrar etmək, yenidən etmək; Mid. E. edlæchen təkrar etmək  
*ēce* adj. əbədi, daimi; Mid. E. ēche ēcnys n., fem. (jō) əbədilik, daimilik Mid. E. ecchennesse, ēcnesse  
*Ebrēisc* adj. yəhudi, yəhudiyə xoş olan  
*Egyptisc* adj. misirli; Egyptian  
*emniht* n.fem. (i) gecə-gündüzün bərabərliyi, bərabərlik  
*endebyrdnes(s)* n.fem. (jō) nizam, sıra, ardıcılıq, dərəcə ; yerləşmə ; þurh endebyrdnesse növbə ilə, sıra ilə  
*ēode, ēodon, ēodan* See *zān*  
*ēorðe* n.fem. (n) 1.torpaq, yer; 2. aləm, dünya; Mid.E. erthe; Mod.E. earth  
*ēow, īow* See *zē* prn.

## F, f

*fæder* n. m. (r) ata; Mid. E. fader; Mod. E. father  
*fær* n., neut. (a) 1. gəmi; 2. yol; on fare «yolda»;  
*fēorða* adj. dördüncü; Mid. E. fēorðe; Mod. E. fourth  
*fēower* num. dörd; Mid. E. fēower; Mod. E. four  
(*ʒe-*)*fēran* w.v. I 1. getmək, hərəkət etmək, səyahət etmək, 2. baş vermək, əmələ gəlmək; 3. əldə etmək, nail olmaq; 4. əzab-əziyyət çəkmək; Mid. E. fēren «getmək, səyahət etmək»  
*flēowan* str. v. axmaq, axıb tökülmək  
*folc* n., neut. (a) xalq, camaat, adamlar; ordu; Mid. E. folk

«xalq, camaat»; Mod. E. folk  
*forescēawunz* n., fem. (ō) bəsirət; qabağıgörmə, gələcəyi görmə  
*forð* adv. gələcəkdə, bundan sonra, bundan belə; irəlidə; daima, həmişə, fasiləsiz olaraq Mid. E. forth; Mod. E. forth  
*frēolsian* w. v. II 1. bayram etmək; 2. müqəddəs bir şey kimi saxlamaq; qorumaq  
*ful(l)* I adj. dolu, bütöv; qurtarmış; II adv. tamam, büsbütün, çox; ful oft «çox tez-tez»; be fullan tamamilə, büsbütün; Mid. E. ful; Mod. E. full  
*fyrmeſt* adj. ən birinci, ən yaxşı

### 3

*zān, zanzan* supp.v. (pt. ēode, zē~) 1. getmək; gəlmək; hərəkət etmək; 2. baş vermək; Mid. E. gangen, goon (pt. went) Mod. E. to go  
*zē* prn. siz; Mid.E. zē, ye; Mod. E. (arch.) ye  
*zēar, zēr* n. neut. (a) il: bahar; to yēare “bu ilə”; þæs yēares “bu ildə”  
*zēara* adv. əvvəl, çoxdan, keçmişlərdə; bu dəfə; Mid. E. zēare, zāre «çoxdan»; Mod.E. yore (of zēarlic adj. illik; Mid. E. zērlīch, yērly; Mod. E. yearly)  
*zehæfd* v.past tense (ye-)hæfde; hæfdon, hæfdan, hæfst See habban  
*zehēawan* w.v.II məhv etmək; kəsmək, doğramaq; budamaq  
*zehīwod* from (zē-)hiwan w.v.II yaratmaq, xəlq etmək  
*zehyred* from (ze-)hȳran, -hi(e)ran, -hēran w.v. I, 1. eşitmək; tanımaq; bilmək; başa düşmək; 2. qulaq asmaq 3. mənsub olmaq; Mid. E. hēren dinləmək, eşitmək; əməl etmək; Mod. E. to hear  
*zemetē* from (ze-)metan w.v. I qarşılamaq, rastlaşmaq; tapmaq; Mid.E. meten; Mod.E. to meet  
(ze-)sc(e)ād See sceād  
(ze-)sceapene See sceap

(*ʒe-*) *sceaft* See *sceaft*  
*ʒod* n.m. (a) Allah, Tanrı; Mid. E. god; Mod. E. god  
*ʒōd*<sup>1</sup> n.m. (a) 1. yaxşılıq, xeyirxahlıq; hədiyyə, bəxşis; 2. bacarıq, qabiliyyət; 3. mal, şey  
*ʒōd*<sup>2</sup> adj. (betera; betst); yaxşı; nəcib; qabiliyyətli, istedadlı; qüdrətli, qüvvətli, əzəmətli; igid, cəsur; əla, üstün; Mid. E. god, good; Mod. E. good  
*ʒodcund* adj. dini, ilahi, müqəddəs; *ʒodcundhad* ruhani, din xadimi  
*ʒodcundlic* adj. ilahi; dini  
*ʒrēciscan* pl.of Grēcisc (*ʒrēcisc*) n.m. yunan  
*ʒremiað*, *ʒremman* w.v. I, II qıcıqlandırmaq, hirsəndirmək; Mid. E. gramien

## H, h

*habban* w.v. III 1. malik olmaq, sahib olmaq; 2. almaq, götürmək; Mid. E. habben; Mod. E. to have  
*hālʒa* m.n. müqəddəs; Mid. E. halwe; Mod. E. hallow  
*hāliʒ* adj. müqəddəs; Mid. E. holy; Mod. E. holy  
*hāliʒ-dæʒ* m.a. holy day; Sabbath; Mid. E. holiday  
*hand* m. fem. (n) 1.əl; 2.tərəf; 3.vərəsə, varis (vəsiyyətnamələrdə, fərmanlarda); tō handa «yaxında, yaxınlıqda»; Mid. E. hond; Mod. E. hand  
(*ʒe-*)*hæfde*; *hæfdon*, *hæfdan*, *hæfst* See *habban*  
(*ʒe-*)*hātan* str. v. VII 1. adlandırmaq; 2. əmr etmək; 3. səbəb olmaq; bir-şey doğurmaq; 4. vəd etmək; Mid. E. hāten «adlandırmaq, əmr etmək»; vəd etmək  
*hāte* See (*ʒe-*)*hāten*  
*hæðen* adj. bütərəstliyə aid olan  
*hæðenzielda* n.m. (a) bütərəst  
*head* adj.1. güclü, qüvvətli, bərk; cəsarətli 2.sərt, amansız; Mid. E. heard; Mod. E. hard  
(*ʒe-*)*h(e)aldan* str. v. VII 1. saxlamaq, tutmaq; sahib olmaq, malik olmaq; 2. müdafiə etmək; 3. idarə etmək; Mid. E.



healdan; Mod. E. to hold  
 (*ǣ-*)*heawan* , str. v. VII məhv etmək, doğramaq, kəsmək;  
 budamaq  
*hefe* n.m. (u) çəki  
*hēo, hīo* prn (fem) o; Mid. E. 1. she; 2. hire, her; Mid. E. she,  
 her  
*hēold, hēolde, hēoldon, hēoldan* See (*ǣ-*) *h(e)aldon*  
*heora, hiora, hi(e)ra* prn. pl. gen. from “hē, hēo, it” onların  
*heretoza* n.m. (n) başçı, rəhbər  
*hī* See *hēo*  
*hiht* See *hyht*  
 1) hit prn o; Mod. E. it  
 (*ǣ-*)*hīwan* w.v. II yaratmaq, xəlq etmək  
 (*ǣ-*)*hīwod* See (*ǣ-*)*hīwan*  
*Hlyda* n.m. (i) mart ayı  
*hwæt* inter. prn. neut. nə, kim; indef. prn. bir şey; Mid. E.  
 what; Mod. E. what  
 (*ǣ-*)*hwæðer* prn. hər bir, hər; hər kəs, hər bir kəs; Mid. E.  
 whether; Mod. E. whether  
 (*ǣ-*)*hýran, hi(e)ran, hēran* w.v. I 1. eşitmək; tanımaq; bilmək;  
 başa düşmək; 2. qulaq asmaq, dinləmək; 3. mənsub olmaq;  
 Mid. E. hēren; Mod. E. to hear  
*hýred* See (*ǣ-*)*hýran*

## I, i

*ic* prn. mən; Mid. E. ic, I, Mod. E. I  
*idel* I adj. səmərəsiz, boş, bihudə, əbəs yerə, nahaq; tənbel,  
 avara, veyil; Mid. E. idel; Mod. E. idle  
*is* See *wesan*

## L, l

*lanƷfære* adj. uzun müddətli, sürəkli, uzunsürən, uzun  
*lārēow* n.m. (wa) müəllim; xətib, vaiz, moizəçi

*lator* See *læt*

*læt* adj. adv. (compr. *latere*, sup. *latest*, *latst*); OE & ME *yavaş*, *yavaş-yavaş*, *asta*, *asta-asta*; Mid. E. *late and latter*; last. Mod. E. *latter*, *last*

*lēas* I n. neut. (a) *yalan*, *qeyri-həqiqi*; *səhv*, *yanlış*;

*lēas* II adj. 1. *bir şeydən məhrum*; 2. *qəlp*, *saxta*; *yalançı*; *adamaldadan*; Mid. E. *-lēas*; Mod. E. *-less*

*lenctenlic* adj. *bahara məxsus*, *baharsayağı*

*lēod*<sup>1</sup> n., fem (ō) *xalq*; *camaat*; *ölkə*; Mid. E. *leed*, *leede*

*lēod*<sup>2</sup> n., masc (i) 1. *insan*, *adam*; 2. *vətəndaş*, *yurddaş*.

*həmvətən*; 3. *rəhbər*, *başçı*; *knyaz*; Mid. E. *leed*, *leede*

*līf* n., neut (a) *həyat*; Mid. E. *līf*; Mod. E. *life*

*lēoht* I n. *işiq*; *parlaqlıq*; *aydınlıq*;

*lēoht* II adj. *açıq*, *aydın*, *parlaq*; Mid. E. *liht*, Mod. E. *light*

*lēon* n, m, (a) *şir*; Mid. E. *leon*, *lian*; Mod. E. *lion*

*lof* n., m (a) *hörmət*, *izzət*, *ehtiram*, *şərəf*; *Eşq olsun!* *Əhsən!*

*Afərin!*

## **M, m**

*māzan* pret.-press. v. *bacarmaq*, *gücü çatmaq*, *qadir olmaq*, *edə bilmək*; *mümkünü çatmaq*; ME. *mowen*; Mod. E. *may*

*maniz*, *moniʒ* adj. *çox*, *çoxlu*; Mid. E. *maniz*; Mod. E. *many*

*manizfle)ald*, *məniʒfle)ald* adj. *saysız-hesabsız*, *müxtəlif*

*man(n)*, *mon(n)* n., m. (i) 1. *adam*, *insan*; *ər*;

*Martius* n. *mart*

*mæʒe*, *mæʒen* See *māzan*

*mæʒenfæst* adj. *güclü*, *enerjili*, *fəaliyyətli*

*mē* prn. (dat., acc. sing.) *mənə*, *məni*; Mid. E. *me*; Mod. E.

*meaht* See *miht*

*meriʒen* See *morgen*

*(ʒe-)metan* w.v. 1. *qarşılaşmaq*, *rastlaşmaq*, *görüşmək*,

*qarşılamaq*; *tapmaq*; Mid. E. *meten*; Mod. E. *to meet*

*micel*, *mycel* adj. *böyük*, *çox*, *iri*, *yekə*, *güclü*; Mid. E. *mich*,

Mod. E. *much*

*mid* prep. *ilə*, *la*, *lə*; *vasitəsilə*; *arasında*; *midealle tamamilə*,

bütövlükdə; him mid onunla; Mid. E. mid.  
*miht, me(a)ht, mæht* n., fem. (i) güc, qüvvə, qüdrət Mid. E.  
 miht, meacht; Mod. E. might  
*mihtiȝ, mehtiȝ* adj. güclü, qüvvətli, qüdrətli Mid. E >  
 mehtiȝ; Mod. E. mighty  
*mōna* n., m. (n) ay; Mid. E. mōne; Mod. E. moon  
*mōnandæȝ, mōndæȝ* n., m.(a) bazar ertəsi, Mod. E. Monday  
*mōnað* n., m. (þ) ay; Mid. E. mōneth; Mod. E. month  
*morȝen* n., m. (ja) səhər, səbh, şəfəq; on morȝen(ne) dan yeri  
 ağararkən, şəfəq sökərkən, hava işıqlananda; Mid. E. morgen;  
 Mod. E. morning

## N, n

*nā, nō* adv. heç vaxt, heç bir vaxt, heç bir vədə, heç, yox;  
 Mid.E. nā; Mod.E. no  
*nacod* adj. lüt, çılpaq, yalın, üryan  
*nān* adj./indef. prn. heç bir, heç nə, heç; Mid. E. noon, no;  
 Mod. E. none, no  
*nānne; nānre* See nān  
*nāht* = nā-wiht  
*nama* n., m. (n) ad; Mid. E. name; Mod. E. name  
*nā-* with uht<sup>II</sup>, nauht,<sup>III</sup> nāht,<sup>III</sup> nōht; Mid. E. naught, nought,  
 not; /prn or adv. (neg); naught, nought; 2. not; OE heç bir şey;  
 heç bir; azacıqda olsa yox; Mod. E. nothing; not, not at all  
*nædre, nedre* n. fem. (n) ilan; gürzə; suilanı; Mid. E. naddere,  
 addere, (n)edd(e)re; Mod. E. adder  
*næron*=*ne wære(n)*, *ne wæron*  
*ne* adv. /conj. yox, yox-yox; nə;  
*nelle, nellað* neg. prs. = ne wille, ne willað See willan;  
*nederran; neddre* See nædre  
*nis* neg. prs.=ne is; See ne wesan  
*nū* adv. indi; Mid. E. nou, now; Mod. E. now

## O, o

*oft* adv. tez-tez, bir qayda olaraq; Mid. E. oft; Mod. E. oft, often

*on* I adv. II prep. üzərində; irəliyə doğru; yaxınlaşmağa doğru; da-, də-; prep. əksinə, qarşı; Mid. E. on; Mod. E. on

*onȝean* I prep. yanında, bir şeyə doğru; II adv. əksinə, qarşı; Mid. E. ayen; ayeyn(es); Mod. E. again; against

*onȝinnan* (*be-*, *ā-*) str.v. III. başlamaq, girişmək, təşəbbüs etmək; Mid. E. gynnen

*onȝinne*; *onȝunnon* See *onȝinnan*

*ōðer* adj. başqası, başqa birisi; ikinci, o birisi; öpər...öpər

ya...ya; *ōðer* *twēȝa* iki şeydən biri; Mid. E. *ōðer*; Mod. E. other

*oððe*, *oððon*, *eðða* conj. və ya; ya...ya;

## P, p

*prica* n., m. (i) uc; tiyə, ağız; Mid. E. prike, Mod. E. prick

*prician* w.v. II O.E. sancmaq; vurub/dəlib keçmək; arasından keçmək; deşmək, dəlmək; ME and NE sürətlə/çaparaq getmək; qaçmaq, tələsmək Mid. E. priken; Mod. E. prick

## R, r

*rīsan* w.v. I qalxmaq, durmaq; Mid. E. rīsen; Mod. E. to rise

*Rōmāne*, *~an* n. pl. romalılar

*Rōmānisc* adj. Roma, romalılara aid olan

*riht* I adj. düz; düzgün; ədalətli; həqiqi; II n., neut (a) hüquq; ədalətlilik, düzlük; vəzifə, borc; Mid. E. riht; Mod. E. right

*rihtlīc* adj. düzgün, ədalətli, düz

## S, s

*sāw(o)l* n. fem. (ō) can, ruh; ürək, qəlb; həyat; sālə; Mod. E. soul

*sæ* n. m. fem. (i) dəniz; Mid. E. sæ; Mod. E. sea

*(zē-)sælan* w.v. I baş vermək, törəmək, uğurla nəticələnmək  
*(zē-)sæliz* adj. xoşbəxt, uğurlu, müvəffəqiyyətli  
*sælp* n. fem. (ō) çiçəklənmə, tərəqqi etmə; var-dövlət; xoşbəxtlik  
*(zē-)scēād* n. neut. (a) 1. fərq, təvafüt ; 2. anlama, başa düşmə; mənə  
*(zē-)sceaft* n., fem. (i) 1. yaratma, xəlq etmə, yaradılış; aləm, dünya; 2. tale, bəxt; 3. təbiət; şərait; Mid. E. schafte  
*sceal* See *sculan*  
*(zē-)scēap, zē-scæp* n. neut. (a) 1. forma; 2. yaradılış, yaratma, xəlq etmə; 3. şərait; tale, bəxt; Mid. E. scap; Mod. E. shape  
*(zē-)sceapen(n)ys(s)* n. neut. (a) yaradılış, yaratma, xəlq etmə  
*sculan* pret-prs. v. borclu olmaq, lazım olmaq, ...malı. ...məli; Mid. E. prs. shall; pt. sholde; Mod. E. shall, should  
*scyppend, sceppend* n. m. 1 yaradan, yaradıcı; törədən; 2. Allah, tanrı, xaliq, yaradan  
*sē<sup>1</sup>* dem.prn.masc.; *sēo*, fem. þæt dem. prn. neut. and def. article. o, kim, nə, hansı; Mid. E. se, þat. that; Mod. E > that and the  
*sē<sup>2</sup>* See *sæ*  
*seczan* w.v. III (pt. *sæzde, sæde*) demək, söyləmək; elan etmək; Mid. E. seggan; Mod. E. to say  
*sēo* dem. prn./art. See *sē*  
*(zē-)setnys* n. fem. (jō) 1. əsas, bünövrə; 2. qanun, ifadə tərzi  
*(zē-)settan* w.v. I, 1. qoymaq, təsis etmək, qurmaq, quraşdırmaq; 2. olmaq, yerləşmək; 3. hesab etmək; həll etmək; 4. yaratmaq, xəlq etmək; Mid. E. setten; Mod. E. to set  
*steorra* n. m. (n) ulduz; Mod. E. star  
*stōw* n. fem. (wō) yer, ərazi; olduğu yer; Mid. E. stōwe; Mod.E. stow (coğrafi adlarda)  
*stunt* adj. gic, sarsaq, səfeh, ağılsız, qanmaz, başıboş, yelbeyin  
*sum* prn. nə isə, nə isə bir, kimsə, birisi, biri; bəzi, bir para, bir qədər; Mid. E. sum; Mod. E. some;  
*sumerlic* adj. yaylıq, yaya aid olan

*(zē-)sundfulness* n., fem. (jō) 1. çiçəklənmə, tərəqqi; firavanlıq; rifa; 2. salamatlıq; sağlamlıq  
*Sunnandæz* n. m. (a) bazar günü  
*sunstede* n. m. (i) gündönümü (günəşin göy ekvatorunun ən uzaq ekliptika nöqtəsindən keçməsi vaxtı; bu hadisə ildə iki dəfə olur; yayda iyunun 22-də və qışda dekabrın 22-də)  
*swā, swæ/swē* I adv. belə, elə; bu tərzdə; II conj. belə ki, hətta; o vaxtdan bəri, o səbəbə ki, ...ötrü ki, ona görə ki;  
*swā...swā* istər...istərsə də; ya...ya  
*swið* adj. 1. güclü, qüvvətli; amansız, sərt; 2. sağ əl (ayaq, tərəf); Mid. E. swir  
*swiðe* adv. çox, hədsiz çox; tez-tez; swiðe swiðe hədsiz  
*(zē-)swutelunz* n., fem. (ō) 1. izah; 2. bəyanat, məlumat; elan  
*swylc, swilc* prn. belə, bu cür  
*swylce, swilce* adv. bu cür, oxşar şəkildə, ...kimi, elə,  
*sȳ, si* subjunctive form See wesan  
*symle* adv. həmişə, daim  
*synna* See syn(n)  
*syn (n)* n. fem. (jō) günah; cinayət; günah iş; ziyan; düşmənçilik; Mod. E. sin

## T, t

*tāc (e)* n., neut. (a) 1. işarə; şəhadət; şəhadətnamə, vəsiqə; 2. bayraq; Mid. E. taken; Mod. E. token  
*(zē-)tacnian* w.v. II qabaqcadan (irəlicədən) təyin etmək, təxis etmək; qeyd etmək, göstərmək, ifadə etmək  
*(zē-)tel* n. neut. (a) 1. hesab, miqdar, sıra; hesablama; 2. hekayə, nağıl, əfsanə, nağıl etmə, hekayə etmə;  
*(zē-)tellan* w.v. I, 1. nağıl etmək, hekayə etmək, söyləmək; 2. hesablamaq; düşünmək; güman etmək, hesab etmək; 3. əmr etmək; Mid. E. tellen; Mod. E. to tell  
*teon<sup>1</sup>* w.v. I, 1. günahlandırmaq, ittiham etmək, əksinə getmək, Mid. E. tēon  
*(zē-)teon<sup>2</sup>* w.v. II, 1. dartıb aparmaq, sürümək; dartmaq;

aparmaq; 2. yola düşmək (səyahətlə getmək); 3. geri qayıtmaq; Mid. E. *tēon*  
*tīd* n. fem. (i) 1. vaxt, zaman; 2. ilin fəsilləri, ilin mövsümü; 3. çağ, an, saat; Mid. E. *tīde*; Mod. E. *tide*  
*tihrend* n. m. (a) təhrikçi, fitləyən, qızırdıran  
*tīma* n. m. (n) 1. vaxt; zaman; 2. tarix (sənəddə); 3. həyat müddəti; 4. fəsil; Mid. E. *time*; Mod. E. *time*  
*tō* I prep. a...ə, üçün, görə; II. adv. həddən artıq (zərf və sifətdən əvvəl), başqa; müəyyən istiqamətə; Mid.E. *tō*, to: Mod.E. *to*  
*tōteran* w.v. IV. 1. tikə-tikə etmək, parçalamaq; 2. dağıtmaq, darmadağın etmək; Mid. E. *to-teren*  
*trēo(w)* n., neut. (wa) 1. ağac; meşə; 2. oduncaq; 3. xaç; Mid. E. *trēo*: Mod. E. *tree*  
*tunzōl* n., m./neut. (a) ulduz, səma cismi

### Ð, þ, ð

*þā<sup>1</sup>* I adv. onda, bu hadisə ilə əlaqədar olan; II conj. nə zaman ki, o vaxtdan bəri; þa...þa nə zaman ki, ...da...də; Mid. E. *þā*  
*þā<sup>2</sup>* prn. (m., fem., neut.) bunlar, onlar (bax *sē*, *sēo*, *þæt*)  
*þā<sup>3</sup>* prn. (acc. sing. fem. from *sēo*)  
*þām<sup>1</sup>*, *þæm* dem. prn. (dat. pl. from *sē*, *þæt*); O. Sax. *thēm* (u)  
*þæm* dem. pron. (dat. pl. from *sē*, *sēo*); O. Sax. *them*  
*(ze-)þancian* w.v. II. 1. təşəkkür etmək; 2. xeyir-dua vermək, uğur diləmək  
*þāra*, *þære* (gen. pl. from *sē*, *sēo*, *þæt*); O.Sax. *thero*  
*þās* dem. prn. (nom. fem. sing.) bu; (nom. acc. pl. onlar) bunlar  
*þæm* See *þām*  
*þær* I adv. orada, oraya, o yerdə; sonra; harada; nə zaman; ðær ðær harada, haradasa; II conj. əgər, hərgah, ...təqdirdə, (-sa, -sə); Mid. E. *þār*; Mod. E. *there*  
*þæt<sup>1</sup>* I dem. prn. neut.; II def. article; Mid. E. *þæt*; M.E. *that*  
*þæt<sup>2</sup>* conj. ki, belə ki, ondan ötrü ki; o vaxtacan ki  
*þe* particle *ðeah* və s. sözlərə qoşulur

*þe* conj. o vaxtdan bəri, ona görə ki, nə zaman ki, haradan ki; onda, orada  
*þe (ðe)* Mid. E. for def. article; Mod. E. the  
*þe, þē* prn. kim, nə, hansı ki, þe...him «hansına ki; kimə ki»  
*þē* See þy  
*þēah* adv. baxmayaraq, hər halda, amma; swā þēah hələ də, hər halda; þēah (þe) conj. amma, lakin, əgər, hətta; Mod. E. though  
*þēh* See þēah  
*(ze-)ðenc(e)an* w.v. I 1. düşünmək, fikirləşmək; nəzərdə tutmaq; niyyətində olmaq, fikrində olmaq; 2. xatırlamaq, yada salmaq; 3. qərara gəlmək, qət etmək; Mid. E. þenchen; Mod. E. to think < O.E. þyncan < þencan  
*þēniʒ-boc* n. fem. (ō) dua kitabı, dini kitab, ibadət kitabı  
*þēod* n. fem. (ō) 1. döyüşçülər dəstəsi; 2. tayfa; xalq; camaat; adamlar; 3. rayon; ölkə Mid. E. þēode  
*þēodum* See þēod  
*þēo(w)* n. m. (wā) nöqər; xidmətçi; kölə; godes þēow keşiş; rahib; Mid. E. þēow  
*þēs* m. *þeos* fem., þis neut. dem. prn. bu, o Mid. E. þes  
*þinʒ* n. neut. (a) 1. şey; iş; narahatlıq; 2. əşya; mülkiyyət; 3. səbəb, dəlil, sübut;  
*þinʒum...þæt* müəyyən məqsədlə, ...görə, ... üçün; for ðis(s) um þinʒum bu səbəbdən; Mid. E. þing; Mod. E. thing  
*þone, þane, þæne* (acc. sing. m.) sē bu, o  
*þonne, þanne, þænne* I adv. 1.onda; sonra; ona görə; belə; hər halda; amma; II conj. nə zaman ki, nə vaxtsa, belə bir zamanda ki; Mod. E. then, than  
*þrida* num. üçüncü; Mid. E. þridde; Mod. E. third  
*þri (e), þry* n.masc. þrio, þrēo num. fem. neut. üç; Mid. E. þrī; Mod. E. three  
*(zē-)þūht; þūhte; ðūhton* See *(ze-)þyncan*  
*þurh* I adv.; II prep. üstündən, üzərindən; ...vasitəsilə...yolu ilə; ...üzərindən; ...səbəbindən; ...görə, ... sayəsində, ...nəticəsində; Mid. E. þurh; Mod. E. through



(*ʒe-*)*þwærlæcan* w.v. I, razılaşmaq, razı olmaq, razılıq vermək  
*þwyrlice* adv. 1.inadkarcasına; 2. səhv, yanlış olaraq, səhv  
olaraq, düzgün olmayaraq  
*þyhtic* adj. qüvvətli, güclü  
(*ʒe-*)*þyncan* w.v. I.görünmək; ... gəlmək; ... kimi görünmək  
Mid. E. þynchen; Mod. E. methinks

## U, u

*ūre* poss. bizim; prn. Mid. E. ūre; Mod. E. our  
*ūtan(e)*, *uton* adv. xaricdən, bayırdan, kənardan, eşikdən;  
bayır tərəfdən; Mid.E. ūt; Mod. E. out

## W, w

*wā*, *wæ* interjection. əfsus, heyhat; heyıf; bəla, müsibət,  
fəlakət; Mid.E. wā, wæ, wei; Mod. E. woe  
*wanedan* See (*ʒe-*)wanian  
(*ʒe-*)*wanian* w.v. II. azalmaq, əksilmək; pisləşmək,  
pisləşdirmək; tənəzzül etmək; öz qüvvəsini və yaxud  
ehtiramını, hörmətini (hakimiyyətini) itirmək; Mid. E. wanien;  
Mod.E. to wane  
(*ʒe-*)*wanod(e)* See (*ʒe-*)wanian  
*wānunz* n. fem. (ō) tənəzzül; azalma, əksilmə (ay).  
*wæron* pt. pl. See wesan  
*wæs* pt. sing. See wesan  
*wæstm* n. masc/neut. (a) 1. bitki, yaşıllıq, göylük, nəbatat; bar,  
bəhər, meyvə  
*wē* prn. biz; Mid. E. we; Mod. E. we  
(*ʒe-*)*weorc* n. neut. (a) 1. iş, hərəkət, əməl; 2. müdafiə  
qurğuları; Mid. E. weorc; Mod. E. work  
*wesan* str. v. ,V olmaq (present sg: eom, eart, is; pl.  
sint./sindon; pt. sg. wæs, pl. wæron) Mid. E. wesen (present.  
sg. am, art, is; pt. sg. was, pl. weren; Mod. E. (present. sg. am,  
is, are; pt. was, were: (OE. bēon > to be)

*west* adv. qərbə, qərbə doğru; West  
*wēsten* səhra, çöl-biyaban, düzənlik  
*wicu*, *w(i)ucu* n. fem. (ō) həftə; Mid.E. wike; Mod.E. week  
*wizelunz* See *wizlunz*  
*wizlian* w.v. II. 1. fala baxmaq, uydurmaq, ovsunlamaq; 2. qabaqcadan xəbər vermək, gələcəkdən xəbər vermək; gələcəyi qabaqcadan bildirmək  
*wizlunz* n. fem. (ō) fala baxma, cadulama, ovsunlama; gələcəyi qabaqcadan xəbər vermə; uydurma  
*willan*, *wyllan* anomalous v. (present sg. wille, pl. willað) istəmək, niyyətində olmaq, arzulamaq; Mid. E. will; Mod. E. will  
*witodlice* adv. həqiqətən, əslində, doğrudan da  
*word* n. neut. (a) söz, buyruq, hökm, sərəncam; Mid. E. word; Mod. E. word  
*(ze-)worhte* See *(ze-)wyrca*  
*woruld* n. fem. (i) 1. dünya, aləm; 2. həyat; Mid. E. weoreld; Mod. E. world  
*woruldlic* adj. dünyəvi, cahanşümül  
*wracu* n. fem. (ō) 1. bədbəxtlik; cəhd, cidd-cəhd; yoxsulluq; 2. kin, ədavət; düşmənçilik; 3. təqib, təqib etmə; intiqam; Mid. E. wrake  
*(ze-)wrohte* See *(ze-)wyrca*  
*wuce*, *wucu* See *wicu*  
*wuldor* n. neut. (a) şərəf, şan, şöhrət  
*wulf* n. m. (a) canavar; Mid. E. wuff; Mod. E. wolf  
*(ze-)wuna* n. m. (n) adət, qayda  
*wundor* n. neut. (a) möcüzə, xariqə; Mid. E. wunder; Mod. E. wonder  
*wundorlice* adv. çox gözəl, çox qəşəng, çox yaxşı, qəribə, valehedici, son dərəcə gözəl  
*wurðmynt* n. m./fem. (i) şan, şöhrət, şərəf  
*(ze-)wyrca* w.v. I, 1. işləmək; 2. yaratmaq, xəlq etmək; etmək  
*(ze-)wyrð* n., fem. (i) 1. tale, bəxt; 2. hadisə; fakt; Mid. E. wurde; Mod. E. (arch.) weird

*wyri ʒunʒ* w.v. I. korlamaq, xarab etmək; dağıtmaq  
*wyrm* n. m. (i) əjdaha; ilan; soxulcan, qurd; Mid. E. wurm;  
Mod. E. worm  
*wyrm- cynn* n. neut. (ja) 1. ilan; 2. qurd, soxulcan

## Y, y

*ydel* See idel

*yfel* I. n. neut. (a) 1. pislik, yamanlıq, pis iş; zərər, ziyan;  
bəla; dağıtma, uçurtma, viran etmə; 2. amansızlıq, rəhmsizlik,  
qəddarlıq; cinayət; qərəzlik, kinli; II. adj. iyrenc, pis, xarab  
*ymbryne* n. m. (i) 1. axın, axıb gətmə; hərəkət; 2. dövrü hərəkət

*Translated and analysed by the editor associate  
professor M.M.Pashayeva*

## SECTION 2 GLOSSARY OF TERMS

**ablaut** - (vowel gradation, apophony) - variation of the root vowel in different forms of the same verb, which gives a corresponding modification of grammatical function or meaning: e.g. ī-ā-ī-i (OE strong verbs: wri<sup>1</sup>tan – wrā<sup>2</sup>t – wri<sup>3</sup>ton – wri<sup>4</sup>ten), (NE: sing, sang, sung; write, wrote, written). An independent vowel interchange unconnected with any phonetic conditions and different vowels appear in the same environment surrounded by the same sounds. **Qualitative Ablaut** is the gradation in which the vowel differs only in quality. E.g. in Indo-European languages the change [e~o] нести~ноша. Alternation of short and long vowels and also alternation with zero (i.e. lack of a vowel) is **Quantitative Ablaut** [a~a:] in Germanic languages. There existed the following variants or ‘grades’ of Ablaut: full (or “e” grade, full grade with ablaut or “o”), lengthened grade with ablaut and zero grade. The results of this alternation can be seen in the following Modern English related words (listed in the same order as the above grades): sit, sat, seat; and also in the OE strong verb system. See *vowel gradation*.

*Ablaut; абляут*

**ablative** - a grammatical case expressing typically the relations of separation and source and also frequently such relations as cause or instrument.

*Çıxışlıq hal; аблативный надеж*

**absolute construction with the Noun in the Dative case** - a construction in OE used in translations from Latin in imitation of the Latin Dativus Absolutus.

*Yönlük halında isimdən ibarət müstəqil (absolüt)  
konstruksiyası; абсолютная конструкция с*

***существительным в дательном падеже***

**accent** - an articulative effort giving prominence to one syllable over adjacent syllables; the prominence thus given a syllable. The Old English accent tended to fall more commonly on the first syllable. Foreign words entering English have sometimes assumed the English accent, sometimes not.

***Vurġu; ударение***

**accusative case** - the grammatical case that marks the direct object of a verb or the object of any of several prepositions; e.g. in OE Nominative, singular “fisc” – Accusative, “fisc”; Nominative, plural “fiscas” – Accusative, “fiscas (fish)”. See also **case**.

***Təsirlık hal; винительный падеж, аккумулятив***

**adjectival suffixes in OE** - the following are the most important OE adjective-forming suffixes: -en: ȝylden “golden”; -iȝ: mihtiȝ “mighty” (NE -y); -isc (with mutation): Enȝlisc “English” (NE -ish); -sum: sibbsum “peaceful”; -full (<adj.full): sorȝfull “sorrowful” (NE –ful); -lēas: ārlēas “dishonoured” (NE -less); -lic (noun”lic”- body in Modern English -like): folclīc “popular”.

***Qədim ingilis dilində sıfət düzəldən şəkilçilər;***

***древнеанглийские суффиксы образующие прилагательные***

**adverb-forming suffixes in OE:** they are –e: lanȝe “long”, ȝelice “similarly”; -līce (<līc+e; Modern English -ly): frēondlīce “friendly”;

***Qədim ingilis dilində zərf düzəldən şəkilçilər;***

***древнеанглийские суффиксы образующие наречия***

**affix** - a morphological means of word formation. Some of the important OE suffixes and prefixes were arranged according to the parts of speech they served to form: a) noun-forming suffixes: -ere, -estre, -nd, -inȝ, -nes: b) adjectival suffixes: -en, -iȝ, -isc, -lēas, -lic; c) verb

forming suffix -an; d) adverb-forming suffixes: -sian.  
Prefixes: ā-, be-, for-, 3e-, mis-, of-, on-. Affixes are bound forms that can be added: a) to the beginning of a word (=a prefix); e.g. un- usually changes the meaning of a word to its opposite: kind – unkind; b) to the end of a word (=a suffix); e.g. -ness usually changes an adjective into a noun: kind-kindness; c) within a word (=an infix).

**Sözdüzəldici şəkilçi; словообразовательный аффикс**

**affixing language** - a language that uses affixes as its main way of expressing grammatical relationship.

**Şəkilçili dil; аффиксирующий язык**

**the age of Chaucer** – the period which lasts from the 14<sup>th</sup> century till the end of the 15<sup>th</sup> century. It is linked with Geoffrey Chaucer’s name in English literature before W.Shakespeare.

**Çoser dövrü; период Чосера**

**agglutinative language** - a type of language in which words consist of lengthy strings of forms. E.g. Finnish, Hungarian, Turkish.

**Aqlutinativ dil; агглютинативный язык**

**agreement (concord)** - a type of grammatical relationship between two or more elements in a sentence, in which both or all elements show a particular feature; e.g. in Old English the noun agreement may affect case, number, gender and person: þa cwæþ hē be þam hēahfædere Iācobe “he said about the patriarch Jacob” (dative case, singular, masculine gender).

**Uzlaşma; согласование**

**Ælfric (955-1020)** - an abbot and very productive writer of the Late OE period whose language represents classic Late West Saxon in its culmination.

**Əlfrik; Эльфрик**

**Ælfric’s grammar** (X century) - grammar book written by

Ælfric, who gave OE equivalents of Latin forms and constructions. His grammar devised English grammatical terms by means of translation-loans.

*ƒlfrikin ƒrammatikas; Грамматика Эльфрика*

**alliteration** - a sequence of words beginning with the same sound, especially as used in poetry. E.g. in the OE epic “Beowulf” the line with alliterating sounds: Wæs sē ƒrimma ƒræst ƒrendel hāten “Was the evil spirit Grendel called”.

*Alliterasiya; аллитерация*

**allophone** - any of the different forms of a phoneme. E.g. in OE the letter “ƒ” stood for 3 different phonemes [g], [j] [ǵ]; the letter “c” stood for 2 – [k], [k’]; þ, ð, f, s indicated voiced and voiceless consonants.

*Allofon; аллофон*

**alphabet** - a set of letters which are used to write a language. Old English alphabet used the Latin script. See *runic alphabet, Latin alphabet*.

*ƒlifba; алфавит*

**alphabetic writing** - a writing made up of separate letters which represents vowel and consonant sounds of a language.

*ƒlifba yazısı; алфавитное письмо*

**alternation** - the relationship between the different forms of a linguistic unit. The term is used especially in morphology and in phonology. E.g. the related vowels [i:] and [e] in “deceive [di’si:v]” are alternations.

*ƒvəzləntə; чередование*

**analytic or analytical** - characterized by analysis rather than inflection, opposed to *synthetic*.

*Analitik; аналитический*

**analytical comparison** - is the most important innovation in the adjective system in the ME period. It is the way of forming degrees of comparison of an adjective by means

of the words “more” and “most”, regardless of the number of syllables and were even preferred with monosyllabic and dissyllabic words.

***Müqayisə dərəcəsinin analitik üsulu; аналитический способ сравнения***

***analytical form*** - a new device which developed in Late Old English and Middle English and came to occupy the most important place in the grammatical system. Analytical forms developed from free word groups. The first component of these phrases gradually weakened or lost its lexical meaning and turned into a grammatical marker, while the second component retained its lexical meaning and acquired a new grammatical value in the compound form. 1) analytical verb-forms: e.g. in G.Chaucer: perfect – hath holpen (has helped); passive - is engendered (is born); 2) the use of prepositions for grammatical purposes: e.g. in G.Chaucer: drought of March; 3) a fixed word-order began to develop in ME.

***Analitik forma; аналитическая форма***

***analytical language*** - the Middle English and New English are mainly analytical.

***Analitik dil; аналитический язык***

***analytical way*** - analytical form-building is productive in all parts of speech.

***Analitik üsul; аналитический способ***

***the Angles*** – a Germanic tribe who came from the lower valley of the Elbe and southern Denmark; they made their landing on the east coast and moved up the rivers to the central part of the island to occupy the districts between the Wash and the Humber, and to the north of the Humber. They founded large kingdoms which had absorbed their weaker neighbours: East Anglia, Mercia and Northumbria.

***Anqlar; англы***

***Anglian dialect*** - Alongside West Saxon there existed a



number of Anglian forms. The epic poems of the OE period seems to be originally written in an Anglian dialect. “Enȝlisc” in OE spoken by the Angles who settled on the territory of Anglian kingdoms in the middle of the 6<sup>th</sup> century, extending northward from the Thames over the greater part of what is now England and the Lowlands of Scotland.

*Anqlların dialekti; диалект англов*

*Anglo-Irish* - a variety of English in the 18<sup>th</sup> century.

*İngilis irland variantı; англо-ирландский вариант*

*the Anglo-French (Anglo-Norman) language* - an official language used by the feudal upper class, the government and the court after the Norman conquest in England (12<sup>th</sup> –14<sup>th</sup> cc.)

*Anqlo-fransız (anqlo-norman) dili; англо-французский (англо-нормандский) язык*

*Anglo-Saxon Heptarchy* - Northumbria, Mercia, East Anglia, Wessex, Sussex, Essex, Kent. Various tribes combined either for mutual protection or under the influence of a powerful leader to produce small kingdoms. Seven of these had a fairly stable existence and are spoken of as the Anglo-Saxon Heptarchy.

*Yeddi Anqlo-sakson krallığı;*

*союз семи королевств англов и саксов*

*(англосаксонские королевства)*

*the Anglo-Saxon Chronicles* - the brief records that had been made in Anglo-Saxon monasteries since the 7<sup>th</sup> century were collected and supplemented at Winchester in the second half of the 9<sup>th</sup> century.

*Anqlo-sakson səlnamələri; Англо-саксонская хроника*

*anomalous verbs* - a minor group of verbs with irregular forms which do not fit into any of the groups. E.g. (in OE willan, wendan, ȝan, dōn, wesan, bēon, ēode) include willan “to

will”, nyllan(<ne willan) “will not”, zān “to go”, dōn “to do”, wesan (beon) “to be”.

***Qaydasız fellər; неправильные глаголы***

***aphaeresis*** – the loss of one or more initial sounds of a word.

E.g. in the Old English personal pronoun “hit” the letter “h” dropped in Middle English; the noun “hnutu” became “nutu”, then “nut”.

***Aferezis (sözün əvvəlində heca və ya səsin düşməsi); афerezис; поглощение (отпадение начального звука слова)***

***apocope*** - the loss of one or more final sounds of a word. E.g. the Old English adjective “prættiz” became “pretty”.

***Sözdə axırıncı hecanın və ya səsin düşməsi (apokopa); апокопа, (усечение) падение конечного звука или слогов слова***

***archaism*** - a lexical item that is a survivor of forms previously more widely used. E.g. Newfoundland English “drite” meaning ‘dryness in the air’.

***Arxaizm; архаизм***

***article*** - a word which is used with a noun, and which shows that the noun refers to something definite or something indefinite. Old English had no articles. Both *definite* and *indefinite articles* were formed in Middle English. The form of the definite “the” can be traced back to the OE demonstrative pronoun *sē* (masculine, singular), which in the course of history came back to be used on analogy with the forms of the same pronoun. It had the initial consonant [θ] and began to be used with all nouns. The indefinite article developed from the OE numeral “ān”. In Middle English it split into parts of speech: the indefinite pronoun “an”, losing a separate stress and the numeral “one”, remaining stressed as any other notional word. Later the indefinite pronoun “an” grew into the indefinite article “a/an”. It became the most important kind of a determiner.

**Artikl; артикль**

**aspect** - a grammatical category which deals with how the event described by a verb is reviewed, such as whether it is in progress, habitual, repeated, momentary. Perfective aspect in OE was expressed by the prefix “ge-“ and denoted the result of a completed action: būan “to dwell, to live”, ge-būn “dwelt”; durative (continuous) aspect in Old Germanic languages considered the action in its progress. The majority of OE verbs could express aspective relations without prefixation.

**Felin tərzi; вид глагола**

**assimilation** - the most important type of the change in which one sound is influenced by the pronunciation of a neighbouring sound. E.g. from Common Germanic: ærm>OE earm “arm” [æ] became “ea” under the influence of “r+a consonant”.

**Assimilyasiya; ассимиляция (уподобление)**

**assimilative vowel change** - the change explained by the phonetic position of the sound in the word. E.g. breaking and mutation took place in the prehistoric period of the development of the English language and account for the discrepancy between the OE and Common Germanic vowel system.

**Assimilyasiyalı sait dəyişməsi; ассимилятивное изменение гласных**

**auxiliary verb** - part of the predicate phrase containing the tense and possibly a modal and / or (have+en) and / or (be+ing).

**Kötəkçi fel; вспомогательный глагол**

**В**

**back formation** - a process of word formation where a new word is formed by removing an imagined affix from another word (editor->edit).

**Arxa sözdüzəltmə; обратное словообразование**

**barbarian tribes** - ancient Germanic tribes in the first centuries

who passed the stage of development and called “barbarian tribes”: Goths, Vandals, Lombards, Frisians, Teutons, Angles, Saxons, Jutes, Scandinavians.

***Barbar tayfaları; варварские племена***

***base form*** - the form of a linguistic element before it is inflected (affixed); e.g. OE *fisc* “fish” is a base-form before it becomes *fiscere* “fisherman”, “*zōd*” is the base-form of the word “*zōdnes*”.

***Əsas; основа***

***Bede (673-735)*** - a monastic scholar who wrote the first history of England “*Historia Ecclesiastica Gentis Anglorum*” (“*Ecclesiastical History of the English People*”).

***Beda; Беда***

***Beowulf*** - the oldest epic poem. Its author is unknown. It is a source of material reflecting the life, customs and interests of the Scandinavians and Anglo-Saxons in the 5<sup>th</sup> and 6<sup>th</sup> centuries. The epic was probably first put down in Mercian about 700. The only West-Saxon manuscript dates from the late 10<sup>th</sup> century and now is kept in the British Museum.

***Beovulf; Беовульф***

***blend*** - a word created from two or more existing elements, as in OE *hlāford* (lord) < *hlāf* + *weard* (bread-keeper).

***Hibrid-söz; слово-гибрид***

***bidialectal ( bidialectism)*** – a person who knows and can use two different dialects can be described as bidialectal.

***İkidialektlilik; двудиалектный***

***bilingual*** - a situation in which two languages are equally used for different communicative purposes. E.g. In the Middle English period English and French began to permeate each other. The French town-dwellers had to pick up English words to make themselves understand, while the English began to use French words in current speech.

***Íkidillilik; двуязычие***

***borrowing*** - a word transplanted from one language into another. E.g. OE *stræt* “street” (< Latin *strata* “via”); *scōl* “school” (< Latin *schola*); ME *werre* “war” (< OFr *werre*, Modern French *guerre*).

***Аһһһһ sۆz; заимствование***

***bound morpheme (form)*** - a grammatical unit that never occurs by itself, but is always attached to some other morpheme. E.g. in the OE word “*Sunnandæz* (Sunday) the underlined “-an” is the bound morpheme (or form) connecting “*sunne*” and “*dæz*”.

***Вағһһ morphem (forma); связанная морфема (форма)***

***breaking (brechung; fracture)*** - is a peculiarity of OE which consists in the diphthongization of short vowels before certain combinations of consonants. The process of breaking took place in the 6<sup>th</sup> century. The resulting vowel was a diphthong (hence the name “breaking” – a monophthong was broken into a diphthong). E.g. *æ*>*ea* before *r*+consonant: *ærm*>*earn* (arm); *herte*>*heorte* (heart); *e*>*eo* before *l*+consonant: *æld*>*eald* (old); *melcan*>*meolcan* (milk); before *h*+consonant: *æhta*>*eahta* (eight); *selh*>*seolh* (seal); *h* final: *sæh*>*seah* (saw); *feh*>*feah* (cattle).

***Parçalanma; преломление***

**C**

***calque*** - also a *loan-translation*. A process of using native elements to express a foreign term. The native elements match the meanings and structure of the foreign terms. E.g. from Latin into Old English: *Mōnandæz* (< Lat. *Lunae dies* “the day of the moon”(Monday”); OE *Wodnesdæz* (< Lat. *Mercuri dies* “the day of Mercury”(Wednesday”).

***Kalka; аһһһһ tәrcүтә; Калька-заимствование***

***“The Canterbury Tales” (XIV c.)*** – a great collection of

linked stories in narrative verse by G. Chaucer. Its manuscript have survived to this day. The Prologue of this poem, the masterpiece of English poetry, describes how the poet found himself at the Tabard Inn, in Southwark, bound on a pilgrimage to the shrine of St. Thomas Becket at Canterbury.

***Kenterberri hekaýlári; Кэнтэрберийские рассказы***

**case** - a grammatical category that shows the function of the noun phrase in a sentence. The form of the noun or noun phrase changes (by inflection) to show the different functions or cases. E.g. OE nouns had 4 cases: Nominative, Genitive, Dative and Accusative.

***Hal; надеж***

***Celtic borrowing (loan-word)*** - Abundant borrowings from Celtic are to be found only in place-names. The OE kingdoms Kent, Deira and Bernicia derived their names from the names of Celtic tribes. There are 160 loan-words in all from Celtic. The words of early Celtic originate "dūn" (NE "a hill, protected place", cf. the Downs); "bin" "basket, crib, bin", the words "cross" and "cursian" "to curse" are early Celtic loans introduced by the Irish missionaries in the North. There are many Celtic elements in the names of rivers, mountains and towns, etc all over Britain. E.g. It survives in the word Avon (Stratford-on-Avon), uisge "water" in Exe, Esk, Ux, Ouse (cf. The later Celtic loan "whisky" <uisge), "dun, dum" in Dumbarton, Dundee, London).

***Kelt alıpta çözləri; кельтские заимствования***

***the Celtic language*** - the language spoken over extensive parts by Europe in the first millennium B.C. during the period of Celtic migrations and expansion.

***Kelt dili; кельтский язык***

***centum language*** - an Indo-European language that kept

palatal stops. E.g. [k] in such words as centum “hundred” and did not change to palatal or alveolar fricatives.

**Kentum dili; кентум языки**

**change: qualitative changes** affect the quality of the sound; e.g. OE þæt [æ] > ME that [a]; OE cild [k] > ME child [tʃ].

**quantitative changes** make long sounds short or short sounds long: OE climban [i] > ME climben [i:];

**dependent changes** (also positional or combinative) are restricted to certain positions or phonetic conditions: OE ea > ie “ealdira > ieldra” (elder);

**independent changes** (also spontaneous or regular) take place irrespective of phonetic conditions, i.e. they affect a certain sound in all positions: Germanic ai > OE ā.

**qualitative changes; keyfiyyät dəyişmələri;**

**качественные изменения**

**quantitative changes; kətiyyät dəyişmələri;**

**количественные изменения**

**dependent changes; asılı dəyişmələr; зависимые изменения**

**independent changes; müstəqil dəyişmələr;**

**независимые изменения**

**cognate** - A language or linguistic form that is historically derived from the same source as a common ancestor. English “brother” and German “Bruder” are cognates both derived from Indo-European “bhrátar”.

**Qohum; родственный**

**Common Germanic** - It is well-known that the English language belongs to the Germanic group of the Indo-European family of languages. The Germanic subgroups: 1) East Germanic, Gothic, Vandalic, Burgundian; 2) North Germanic: Old Norwegian, Old Danish, Old Swedish, Old Icelandic; 3) West Germanic: Old Saxon, Old Low Franconian, Old Frisian, Old English.

***Ūtunġerman; общеġерманский***

***Common Germanic words*** - words which occur in the Germanic languages but not in non-Germanic languages of the IE family: nouns: (a) parts of the body: heafod “head”, hand, finzēr “finger”; (b) animal: bera “bear”, fox; (c) plants: zræs “grass”, āc, “oak”; (d) dwelling and their parts, articles of furniture; hūs “house”, rūm “room”, benc “bench”; (e) means of transport: bat “boat”, scip “ship”; (f) various natural phenomena and objects: sæ “sea”, land, sand, rezn “rain”; adjectives: “zrēne “green”, blēa “blue”, lytel “little”, eald, “old”; verbs: seon, “see”, spreca “speak”, tellan “to tell”, slæpan “to sleep”, drincan “to drink”.

***Ūtunġerman tənşəli sözlər; общеġерманские слова***

***Common Indo-European stratum*** - words belonging to common IE stratum constitute the oldest part of the OE vocabulary. They go back to the days of the IE parent language before its extension over the wide territories of Europe before the appearance of the Germanic group. Among these words are the names of some natural phenomena, plants and animals, agricultural terms, names of parts of the human body, terms of kinship, etc. e.g. OE: mōdor (mother) – Latin: mater, Russian: мать.

***Ūtunġi Hind-Avrora qatı; общеиндоевропейский слой***

***Common IE words in OE*** – words inherited from the IE parent language occur in OE and the other Germanic as well as non-Germanic languages of the IE family: 1) nouns: a) family relations: fæder “father”, mōdor “mother”, sweoster “sister”; b) parts of the body : heorte “heart”, nōsu “nose”, fōt “foot”; c) animals: swīn “swine”, zāt “goat”, zōs “goose”. d) plants: trēow “tree”, beorc “birch” corn; e) heavenly bodies: sunne “sun”, mona “moon”; f) various: nama, “name”, niht “night”, mēre “lake, sea”; 2)



adjectives: niwe “new”, lanȝ “long”, read “red”, swēte “sweet”, full. 3) verbs: sittan “sit”, licȝan “lie”, tēran “tear”, etan “eat”.

**Ūtumi Hind-Avrora mənşəli sözlər;**  
**общеевропейские слова**

**common case** - the first form, which has resulted from the merging of the nominative case and dative case forms in Late Middle English and New English. The Common case in Middle English had a general meaning, which was made more specific by the context. The main function of the Accusative case - to present the direct object was fulfilled in ME by the Common case. The Common case of the infinitive was widely used in different syntactical functions, e.g. writan (to write), cēpan (to keep), drincan (to drink).

**Ūtumi hal; общий надеж**

**Common Germanic substratum** - It includes words which are shared by most Germanic languages, but don't occur outside the group. These words constitute an important distinctive mark of the Germanic languages at the lexical level. This layer is smaller than the layer of common IE words. Semantically they are connected with nature, the sea and everyday life. E.g. OE: eorðe (earth), German: Erde.

**Ūtumgerman substrati (altqatı); общегерманский субстрат (подслой)**

**comparative linguistics** - A branch of linguistics which studies two or more languages in order to compare their structures and to show whether they are similar or different. Comparative linguistics is used in the study of language types (typology) in comparative historical linguistics.

**Müqayisəli dilçilik; сравнительная лингвистика**

**comparative reconstruction** - This procedure works backwards from languages whose pronunciations are

known, using the comparative method to reconstruct earlier forms. Most of our information about the oldest states of languages derives from this method.

**Müqayisəli rekonstruksiya (bərraetmə);  
сравнительная реконструкция**

**composition (or word composition)** -is a productive way of forming a compound word by means of two or more elements, each of which is a significant word by itself. e.g. in OE *brynstān* (burning-stone) “brimstone”; *zōd-spell* (good news, God’s message) “gospell”.

**Mürəkkəb söz yaradıcılığı; словосложение**

**compound** – a combination at least two elements that can function separately elsewhere. One or more affixes may be joined. The process by which the word is formed is called compounding. E.g. OE *winter-tide* “winter-tide”, OE *bozen-strinȝ* “string of a bow”. The Modern English compound “gentlemanly” consists of *gentle+man +the suffix-ly*.

**Mürəkkəb (söz); сложное (слово)**

**concord (agreement)** – a type of grammatical relationship between two or more elements in a sentence, in which both or all elements show a particular feature. Most noun modifiers agreed with the noun in gender, number, case and person. e.g. OE *on þæm oþrum þrim dazum* (in those other three days) – Dative case, plural, masculine.

**Uzlaşma; согласование**

**conjugate** - to give the different forms of a verb, as they vary according to number, person and tense. E.g. in OE *ic drīfe* “I drive”, *þū drīfst (-est)* “you drive”, *hē drīfeþ* “he drives.”

**Təsrifləndirmək; спрягать**

**conjugation** - The way in which a particular verb changes for tense, person or number. E.g. the OE verb “writan” (to write) had present tense form in the first person singular

“write”, 2<sup>nd</sup> person writest, 3<sup>rd</sup> person writeb, in the plural writab.

*Təsriflənmə; спряжение*

**consonantal declension (weak declension) of nouns –**

comprises nouns with the stem originally ending in –n, –r, –s, and some other consonants in Old English. E.g.

Nominative case singular “nama” (name); Nominative

case plural “naman” (names).

*İsimlərin samit əsaslı hallanması (zəif hallanma);*

*склонение с основами на согласных (слабое склонение)*

**consonant shift** - A set of regular changes in consonant articulation in the history of a language or dialect: 1) such a set affecting the Indo-European stops and distinguishing the Germanic languages from the other Indo-European languages - Grimm's Law; 2) such a set affecting the Germanic stops and distinguishing High German from the other Germanic languages.

*Samit dəyişməsi; чередование согласных*

**contraction** - a shortened linguistic form attached to an adjacent form; e.g. in OE negative pronoun nān (< ne+ān) “none” “e” is contracted; nōht (< nā+wiht) “nothing” “wi” is contracted.

*İxtisaretmə (sıxışdırma); стяжение*

**copula (linking verb)** - a verb that links a subject to a complement. E.g. “be” is known as the copula in the sentence “she is happy”, since this has been the main function in English. The following are copulative verbs, i.e. they can be used copulatively: feel, look, prove, remain, resemble.

*Bağlayıcı fel; глагол-связка*

**correspondence (between Latin letters and English sounds) -**

The spelling was not entirely phonetic, however, the number of characters in the Latin alphabet was smaller

than the number of phonemes in the English language. E.g. the OE runic alphabet had 24 up to 28, later 33 characters. The Latin alphabet with its 23 letters was insufficient for rendering all OE sounds. It was made more suitable for this purpose by the adoption of several old runic characters and by making the same Latin letters stand for different sounds.

***Uyğunluq; соответствие***

***creole*** - a pidgin that has become the mother tongue of a speech community (through a process of creolization).

***Kreol dil; креольский язык***

***creolization*** - the process by which a pidgin becomes a creole. Creolization involves the expansion of the vocabulary and grammatical system.

***Kreollaşma; креолизация***

***cuneiform*** - writing consisting of wedge-shaped characters, as used in Old Persian or Assyrian writing.

***Mixi yazı; клинопись***

***Cynwulf*** - the poet of the 8th century who wrote in Northumbrian, but his work has survived mainly in Later West Saxon version.

***Künwulf; Куневульф***

## **D**

***Danelaw*** - the territory which was under the rule of Scandinavians or "Danes" (< Danelaz "Danish law") in 878. The same year King Alfred signed the Treaty of Wedmore with the Danes. According to Danelaw more than half of England was yielded to the invaders and recognized as Danish territory by the end of the 9<sup>th</sup> century.

***Danelaq; Данелаг***

***Danish*** - the language spoken in Denmark. The earliest written records in Old Danish date from the 13<sup>th</sup> century. In the

later Middle Ages with the growth of capitalist relations Danish developed into national literary language.

**Daniya dili; Датский язык**

**dative** - the grammatical case of OE nominal parts of speech that marks typically the indirect object of a verb, the object of some prepositions or a possessor. E.g. Hē ēode þe þære stræte “he went along the street”; William him sæde “Williams said to him”; hē sæde his hlāforde Ælfrēde cyninge “He said to his lord King Alfred”. The case of the infinitive was used on a limited scale and mainly when the infinitive functioned as an adverbial modifier of purpose. E.g. OE ic zā tō drincenne “I go to drink”.

**Yönlük hal; дательный надеж**

**daughter languages (related languages)** – these are languages which are thus sister languages to each other (English, German).

**Qohum dillər; родственные языки**

**declension** - a list of case forms of a noun in Old English and other Germanic languages; e.g. OE stān (nominative case), stānes (genitive case), stāna (dative case), etc.

**Hallanma; склонение**

**declension of nouns** - The OE system of declension was based on a number of distinctions: the stem-suffix, the gender of nouns, the phonetic structure of the word, phonetic changes in the final syllables.

**the vowel declension or strong declension** (a-stem, ja-stem, ō-stem, i-stem, u-stem in OE): (1) – a-stem. The class of a-stems includes masculine and neuter nouns; ja-stems are subdivisions of a-stems; (2) o-stems consist exclusively of feminine nouns; (3) i-stems comprise nouns of all three genders; (4) u-stems are made up of masculine and feminine nouns.

**weak declension of nouns** – it has a little distinctive force: a form ending –an (the most common ending

of this declension type) can be that of the genitive, dative and accusative singular, or nominative and accusative plural, as can be seen from the following examples. The declension comprises masculine, feminine and neuter nouns and corresponds to the Latin and Greek declension of “n-stems”. E.g. Nominative: heorte “heart” (feminine, singular), Genitive, Dative, Accusative: heortan.

***Isimlärin hallanması; склонение существительных the vowel declension or strong declension; sait əsash hallanma (qüvvətli hallanma); склонение с основами на гласных (сильное склонение) weak declension of nouns; isimlärin zəif hallanması; слабое склонение существительных***

***decline*** - to change the paradigm of case system of nominal parts of speech. E.g. OE nouns are declined by the opposition of 3 genders, two numbers and four cases: stān, stānes, stāne, stān “stone”. These parts of speech are declined according to the same nominal grammatical categories.

***Hallandırmaq; склонять***

***definiteness***- a category concerned with the grammaticalization of identifiability and nonidentifiability of referents on the part of a speaker or addressee. E.g. definiteness in Old English is identified by a weak adjective used mainly with a demonstrative pronoun opposed to indefiniteness: sē zōda mann “a good man, that good man”.

***Müəyüənlük; определенность***

***degeneration*** - the historical adding of a negative or moral judgement to a word. E.g. Old English “cnapa (serving boy)” has become “knave (a rogue or dishonest person)”. Some “four-letter words” have degenerated. This is the reverse of ***elevation***.

***Mənanın pisləşməsi; ухудшение значения***

**degree** - one of the forms or sets of forms used in the comparison of an adjective or adverb.

*Dərəcə; степенъ*

**degrees of comparison** - OE adjectives distinguished between three degrees of comparison: positive, comparative and superlative. The regular means used to form the comparative and the superlative from the positive were the suffixes -ra and -est/-ost. Sometimes suffixation was accompanied by an interchange of the root-vowel: lonȝ-lenȝra-lenȝest; soft-softra-softost.

*Müqayisə dərəcələri; степени сравнения*

**dental** - a consonant articulated with the tip or blade of the tongue against or near the upper front teeth. E.g. OE consonants [t], [d], [θ], [ð] are dental.

*Dil-diş samiti; денальный (зубной)*

**dependent change = positional (or combinative change)**

Dependent changes are restricted to certain positions or phonetic conditions. See *alternation/ change*

*Asılı dəyişmə; зависимое изменение*

**derivation** - is the formation of a new word or inflectable stem from another word or stem. It typically occurs by the addition of an affix. The derived word is often of a different word class from the original. It may thus take the inflectional affixes of the new word class. E.g. OE fisc+ere (fisherman); frēond+scipe (friendship); slæp+lēas (sleepless).

*Sözdüzəltmə; деривация (словообразование)*

**derivational affix** - an affix by means of which one word is formed (derived from another). E.g. OE -nes (zōdnes “goodness”); -hād (cildhād “childhood”), ā- (ārīsan “to arise”), wip- (wipstandan “to withstand”).

*Sözdüzəltmə şəkilçisi; словообразовательный аффикс*

**determinative** - a word (as an article, possessive,

demonstrative, or quantifier) that makes specific the denotation of a noun phrase. E.g. OE demonstrative pronouns - *sē, sēo, þæt*.

***Determinativ (täyinedici söz); детерминатив (определитель)***

***diachronic*** - development through time. Contrast with *synchronic*.

***Diachronik; диахронический***

***diachronic approach (study)*** - an approach to linguistics which studies how languages change over a period of time. E.g. the change in the verbal system of English from Old English to Modern English.

***Diachronik yanaşma; диахронический подход***

***diachronic linguistics*** - the study of a language change; it has developed as a result of the distinction introduced by Ferdinand de Saussure and sees the language as a continually changing medium by a historical approach. This term is synonymous with “***Historical Linguistics***.”

***Diachronik dilçilik; диахронная лингвистика***

***dialect*** - a regional or social variety of a language as used by one or more speakers of a language who share certain features of pronunciation, lexicon and grammar. E.g. OE Wessex dialect; ME Midland dialect; NE London dialect.

***Dialekt; диалект***

***OE dialects*** - Northumbrian, Mercian, West Saxon, Kentish – the four regional dialects. The Germanic tribes: Angles, Saxons, Jutes and Frisians began their invasion about the middle of the fourth century and their conquest of England was completed within the next century and a half. By about 600 AD they established their separate kingdoms, the principal among them being those formed by the Angles, the Saxons and the Jutes.



**Kentish** - a dialect spoken in the areas Kent and Survey, had developed from the tongue of the Jutes and Frisians.

**West Saxon** - the main dialect of the Saxon group, spoken in the South of the Thames and in the Bristol Channel.

**Mercian** - a dialect derived from the speech of southern Angles spoken in Mercia (central region from the Thames to the Humber).

**Northumbrian** - Anglian dialect spoken from the Humber North to the river Forth.

**Qədim ingilis dilinin dialektləri (Kent, Qərbi Sakson, Mersiya, Nortumbriya); древнеанглийские диалекты (Кентский, Уэссекс, Мерсийский, Нортумбрийский)**

**dialectal classification** - division or classifying of dialects.

**Dialekt təsnifatı; диалектная классификация**

**dialectal division:** e.g. the dialect of Somersetshire, the Yorkshire dialect in the 19<sup>th</sup> and 20<sup>th</sup> centuries).

**Dialekt bölgüsü; диалектное деление**

**dialectology** - a branch of linguistics concerned with the analysis and description of regional varieties of languages.

**Dialektologiya; диалектология**

**digraph** - a group of two successive letters whose phonetic value is a single sound (as “ea” in head or “ng” in ring) or whose value is not the sum of a value borne by each in other occurrences.

**Diqraf; диграф**

**diminutive** - a word, affix or name indicating a small size and sometimes the state or quality of being familiarly known. E.g. OE suffix “-en” was used in forming feminine nouns with diminutive meaning mæzden, mæden “maiden”; -in3: 3ōslin3 “gosling”, deorlin3 “darling”.

**Kiçildici; уменьшительный**

**diphthongization** - a phonetic change of monophthongs into diphthongs. ME diphthongs had an open nuclear and a

closer glide: OE *dæz* > ME *day* [dai]; OE *snāw* > ME *snow* [snou].

***Diftonqlaşma; дифтонгизация***

***dissimilation*** - a phonetic change in which a sound moves away from the pronunciation of a neighbouring sound. E.g. German: *Kartoffel* (potato), earlier *Tartuffeln*, where the [k] dissimilated from [t] in the 17<sup>th</sup> century. The process by which a sound becomes dissimilar to another sound.

***Dissimilyasiya; диссимиляция***

***double comparison*** - the way of forming comparative and superlative degrees of comparison both with analytical and synthetic ways. It was widely used by W. Shakespeare. E.g. *more fressher; most fresshest*.

***İkikat müqayisə; двойное сравнение***

***double negation*** - OE syntax had multiple negation within a sentence or clause. The most common negative particle was “ne” used before the verb. It was accompanied by other negative words, mostly “naht” or “noht” and formed “double negation”. E.g. *and he ellas nan þing ne cwæþ* “and he said nothing more”.

***İkili inkar; двойное отрицание***

***double plural*** - form of words having two markers of the plural. E.g. OE *cild* (child) took the ending “-ru”: *cild - childru*; “-en” was added to the old forms of the plural in Middle English “children”.

***İkili cət; двойное множественное число***

***dual*** - a grammatical number denoting reference to two. In OE the personal pronouns of the first and second persons had a dual number: *wit* “we two”; *zit* “you two”. E.g. *Swā wit furþum spræcon* “about which we both spoke”.

***Cüt kətiyüt forması; двойственное число***

***Dutch*** - the language spoken in the Netherlands. The formation of the Dutch language stretches over a long period; it is linked up with the growth of the Netherlands

into an independent state after its liberation from Spain in the 16<sup>th</sup> century.

***Holland dili; голландский язык***

***dynamic stress*** - The phonetics of the Old English period was characterized by a system of dynamic stress. It is the result of a change of the original free-stress system.

***Dinamik vurğu; динамическое ударение***

**E**

***Early New English*** - The Early New English period lasted from the introduction of printing to the age of Shakespeare from 1475 to 1660.

***Erkən yeni ingilis dili; ранний новоанглийский язык***

***East Anglia*** - the kingdom formed by the Angles in the eastern part of England by 600 AD.

***Şərqi Anqliya; Восточная Англия***

***East Germanic*** - This Germanic subgroup includes Gothic, Vandalic, Burgundian.

***Şərqi German dilləri yarımqruru;***

***восточногерманская подгруппа***

***East Midland*** - one of the main areas of the Central or Midland dialects corresponding to the OE Mercian dialect. East Midland is subdivided into South-East Midland and North-East Midland.

***Şərqi Midlənd (mərkəzi); Восточно-Центральный***

***Edward the Confessor*** - king of England, Edward the Confessor (1042-1066) who had been reared in France, brought over many Norman advisors, distributed among them English lands and wealth and appointed them to important positions in the government and Church. He not only spoke French himself, but insisted on it being spoken by the nobles at his court.

***İngilis kralı Tövbə edən Edvard; Английский король***

***Эдуард Исповедник***

***elevation*** – the historical removal of a negative or moral judgment from a word. E.g. OE “cniht” often meant boy or

servant, whereas its descendant “knight” describes someone honoured by his sovereign.

***Mənanın yaxşılaşması; облагораживание значения***

***England*** - (<OE Enȝlaland “land of the Angles”)- the land of its people is already called Anȝelcynn (i.e. Angle-kin or race of the Angles). From about 1000 Enȝland begins to supersede this term.

***İngiltərə; Англия***

***English*** -(< OE Enȝlisc) the language of the people of England, the United States and other areas. English is one of the West Germanic languages which developed from the dialects of the Angles, part of the Saxons, Frisians and the Jutes. The name English is thus older than the noun “England”.

***İngilis dili; английский язык***

***epenthesis*** - the introduction of an extra medial sound; e.g. Old Icelandic “ofn”, alongside Old English “ofen”, Modern English “oven”. The addition of a vowel to break up perceived difficult consonant clusters. E.g. Latin: faclis >facilis; Modern English: athlete> athelete.

***Epeneteza, эпентеза (вставка)***

***etymology*** - the study of the origin and history of the form and meaning of words.

***Etimologiya; этимология***

***etymological doublets*** - words developing from the same word or root, which entered the given language, in our case English, at different times through different channels. E.g. Latin “discus”, OE disc; NE disk - dish.

***Etimoloji dubletlər; этимологические дублеты***

***etymological strata*** - borrowed words comprise more than half of the vocabulary of the language. The borrowings entered the language from many sources, forming consequently various etymological strata: the Latin element, the

Scandinavian element, the French element.

***Etimoloji laylar; этимологические слова***

***extralinguistic*** - those features in communication which are not directly part of the verbal language, but have an influence on the language use. E.g. the Scandinavian and Norman Conquests are extralinguistic factors in the history of the English language.

***Dilxarici (ekstralingvistik); экстралингвистический***

**F**

***the Faroese language*** - In the Faroe Islands the West Norwegian dialects brought by the Scandinavians developed into a separate language called Faroese. Faroese is spoken nowadays by about 30.000 people.

***Farer dili; фарерский язык***

***feminine*** - the gender that ordinarily includes most words or grammatical forms referring to females.

***Qadin cinsi; женский род***

***feminine gender*** - a grammatical gender that marks nouns which have human or animal female referents. In OE nouns of feminine gender denoted female beings (mōdor “mother”), lifeless things (meolc “milk”), abstract notions (lufu “love”), etc.

***Qadin cinsi; женский род***

***First Consonant Shift (Grimm’s Law)*** - the correspondence between Indo-European and Germanic languages which was presented as a system of interconnected facts by the German linguist Jacob Grimm in 1822. This phenomenon is called the First Consonant Shift or Grimm’s Law. See ***J.Grimm’s Law***

***Birinci samit əvəzlənməsi (Qrimm qanunu); первое (германское) передвижение согласных***

***fixed stress*** - stress which occurs regularly on the same syllable in a word in a particular language. It fell on the first root syllable in OE. aȝāne “gone”; ȝesēon “seen”.

***Sabit vurğu; устойчивое ударение***

***Flemish*** - the language of Flanders. The modern language of the Netherlands formerly called Dutch, and its variant in Belgium known as the Flemish dialect, is now treated as a single language, *Netherlandish*.

***Flamand dili; фламандский язык***

***flexion*** - an affix that signals a grammatical relationship.

***Fleksiya; флексия***

***folk etymology*** - the reanalysis of a word by the speakers in communicating with learners, characterized by the use of relatively simple structures and common lexical items.

***Xalq etimologiyası; народная этимология***

***formation of the national literary English language*** - This formation covers the Early NE period (1475- 1660). Henceforth we can speak of the evolution of a single literary language instead of the similar or different development of the dialects.

***Milli ədəbi ingilis dilinin təşəkkülü; формирование литературного английского языка***

***form-building means*** - In building grammatical forms OE employs grammatical endings, sound interchanges in the root, grammatical prefixes and suppletive forms. Grammatical endings are the principal form-building means used and they are found in all parts of speech. Sound interchanges are combined with other form-building means. Suppletive forms are restricted to several pronouns, a few adjectives and a couple of verbs.

***Sözdəyişdirici vasitələr; формаобразующие средства***

***the Franks*** - In the Early Middle Ages the Franks consolidated into a tribal alliance. Towards the 8<sup>th</sup> century their kingdom grew into one of the largest states in Western Europe.

***Franklar; франки***

**Franks Casket (II-III cc.)** - It is a small box made of whale bone; there are pictures in the centre and runic inscriptions around. The largest among them, in alliterative verse, tells the story of the whale bone of which the Casket is made.

**Frenkin mücrüsü; Рунический ларец**

**the Franconian dialects** - spoken in the North of the Empire; in the later Middle Ages they developed into Dutch, the language of the Netherlands and Flemish, the language of Flanders.

**Frank dialektlæri; франкские диалекты**

**Franco-Latin borrowings** - they came into English from the 11<sup>th</sup> till the 14<sup>th</sup> century. They included all the words relating to the government and administration of the country (French), most literary terms (French) and juridical terms (French), church and religious words, scientific terminology (Latin).

**Fransız-Latin alıntı sözləri; франко-латинские заимствования**

**free morpheme (form)** - A morpheme that can be a word by itself. It is an element that may occur in isolation and/or whose position with respect to neighbouring elements is not entirely fixed. It can be used without a combination with one or more affixes. E.g. OE nouns “scip (ship)”, “nama (name)”; adjectives “soft”, “blæc (black)”.

**Sərbəst morfem(forma); свободная морфема (форма)**

**free stress** - stress which does not occur regularly on the same syllable in words in a particular language.

**Sərbəst vurğu; свободное ударение**

**French borrowings** - a word or expression borrowed from French. The words relating to the government and administration of the country are French by origin (authority, council, people, parliament etc.). A large

number of French words pertain to the church and religion in the 12<sup>th</sup> and 13<sup>th</sup> centuries. French words referring to house, furniture, architecture (arch, castle, column etc.); entertainment (dance, sport, etc).

***Fransız dilindən alınma sözlər; французские заимствования***

***French element*** - among ME borrowings we generally mention earlier borrowings, their source being Norman French, the dialect of William the Conqueror and his followers. These words are: government, parliament, justice, peace, prison, court, crime. Later French borrowings are more colloquial words: air, river, mountain, branch, cage, calm, cost, table, chair. The amount of these Middle English borrowings is estimated as much as 3.500. French borrowings of the New English period entered the language beginning with the 17<sup>th</sup> century - the time of Restoration of monarchy: aggressor, apartment, brunette, campaign, caprice, caress, console, coquette.

***Fransız ünsürü; французский элемент***

***the Frisians*** - The Frisians or the Jutes are Germanic tribes who occupied the south-east Kent and the Isle of Weight.

***Frizlər; фризиане***

***fusional language*** - language in which words express grammatical relationship by using inflections.

***Flektiv dil; флективный язык***

***futhark*** - The runic alphabet. The first six letters of the runic alphabet: ***f*** - feoh (cattle/wealth); ***u*** - ur (bison/aurochs); ***þ*** - þorn (thorn); ***o*** - ōs (god/mouth); ***r*** - rād (riding, journey); ***c*** - cen (torch).

***Run əlifbasının ilk hərfləri; первые буквы рунического алфавита***



## G

***gemination of consonants*** - In all West Germanic languages at an early stage of their independent history most consonants were lengthened after a short vowel before [j]. This process is known as West Germanic “gemination” or “doubling” of consonants: fuljan > OE fyllan (NE to fill). Gothic saljan > OE sellan (NE to sell).

***Samitlärin qoşalaşması; удвоение согласных***

***gender*** - it is associated with the differentiation of sex and therefore the formal grouping into genders in Middle English was smoothly and naturally superseded by a semantic division into inanimate and animate nouns with a further subdivision of the latter into males and females. There are three genders in OE nouns: ***masculine, neuter and feminine***. The gender is either ***natural*** or ***grammatical***. By the natural gender names designating female beings (seo modor “mother”, dohtor “daughter”, cwēn “queen”) are feminine; and those indicating young creatures (cild “child”), (cealf “calf”) are usually neuter. Grammatical gender does not depend upon consideration of sex: stān “stone” is masculine, mōna “moon” is masculine, but sunne “sun” is feminine, as in Modern German (Modern French however, where “pierre” and “lune” are feminine, while “soleil” is masculine). Old English “wīf (wife, woman)” is neuter, but “wīfmann (woman)” is masculine. There is no grammatical gender in Modern English where gender is determined by meaning (i.e. it is natural). E.g. sē mann, sunu, cyninȝ are generally masculine, those denoting male beings.

***Cins; род***

***Grammatical gender; grammatik cins; грамматичес-***

***кий род***

***Natural (lexical) gender; təbii (leksik) cins; лексический род***

**genealogical (genetic) classification** - the grouping of languages into families based on their historical relationship; e.g. English and German belong to Germanic group of languages of Indo-European family.

**Geneoloji (genetik) təsnifat; генеологическая (генетическая) классификация**

**genitive** – a case used to indicate possession and other similar relations. It is usually helpful to begin by translating it with the Modern English ‘s form or using the preposition **of**. E.g. OE Norðmanna land “the Northmen’s land”;

**his-genitive** - the pronoun “his” in the genitive case corresponded both to “he” and “it” and was used in reference to animate and inanimate things in Middle English. E.g. his shoures “its showers”;

**uninflected genitive** - the form of the genitive case of Middle English personal pronouns which became more homogeneous and had lost their forms of agreement. They can be regarded a separate class of personal pronouns.

**Yiyəlik hal; родительный падеж**

**Uninflected genitive; şəkilçisiz yiyəlik halı;**

**нефлективный родительный падеж**

**Germanic Group of Languages** – a branch among the languages which belongs to the vast Indo-European family. The Germanic branch of languages is divided into 3 subgroups: **East Germanic**, **North Germanic** and **West Germanic**. East Germanic languages such as Gothic, Burgundian, Vandalic have been dead for many centuries. North Germanic languages are Scandinavian, Norwegian, Icelandic, Danish, Faroese, Swedish. West Germanic languages are German, English, Frisian, Netherlandish, Afrikaans, Yiddish.

**German dilləri qrupu; германская группа языков**

**Geoffrey Chaucer (1340-1400)** - English poet, the founder of the national literary English language. He was born in

London in 1340. He had varied experience as a student, courtier, official member of Parliament. The culmination of Chaucer's works as a poet is his great unfinished collection of stories "The Canterbury Tales". He wrote it in London dialect.

*Cefri Çoser; Джефри Чосер*

**the Gothic language** - being dead has been preserved in written records of the 4<sup>th</sup>-6<sup>th</sup> centuries. The Goths were the first of the Teutons to become Christian.

*Qot dili; готский язык*

**gradation** - a vowel change that gives a word a new grammatical function. See **vowel gradation**.

*Sait əvəzlənməsi; чередование гласных*

**gradation (ablaut)** - a special kind of a vowel alternation. The system of gradation in Germanic languages is best seen in the so-called strong verbs: ī-ā-i-i ; rīdan-rād-ridon-riden (to ride-rode-ridden)

*Sait əvəzlənməsi, ablaut; чередование гласных, абляут*

**gradation series of OE verb classes** -The OE strong verbs formed their past tense by means of a vowel gradation and by adding certain suffixes. Sometimes the vowel gradation was accompanied by consonant interchanges. Classes from 1 to 6 use the vowel gradation, class 7 includes reduplicating verbs, which originally built their past tense forms by means of repeating the root morpheme.

*Qədim ingilis dilində fel siniflərinin sait əvəzlənməsi sərgəsi; гласные чередования древнеанглийских глагольных классов*

**grammatical categories in Middle English** - Some nominal categories in Middle English were lost: gender and case in adjectives, gender in nouns. The number of forms distinguished in the surviving categories was reduced:

cases in nouns and pronouns, number in personal pronouns. Morphological division into types of declension disappeared. In late ME the adjective lost the distinction of number and the distinction of weak and strong forms.

**Orta ingilis dili dövründə qrammatik kateqoriyalar; грамматические категории в среднеанглийском периоде**

**grammatical ending (inflection)** - a grammatical ending or an inflection is the principal form-building means used. They are found in all the parts of speech that can change their form. They are usually used alone but can also occur in combination with other means. E.g. in OE stān-es (genitive case singular ending), lōc-ode (past tense singular ending).

**Qrammatik sonluq; грамматическое окончание**

**grammatical gender** - OE nouns distinguished three grammatical genders: masculine, feminine and neuter. Through a semantic division, gender in OE was not always associated with the meaning of nouns. See **gender**

**Qrammatik cins; грамматический род**

**grammatical interchange of consonants** - an interchange which arose in the grammatical forms of the word as a result of voicing of consonants.

**Samitlərin qrammatik əvəzlənməsi; ; грамматическое чередование согласных**

**The Great Vowel Shift** - all long monophthongs in New English (XV-XVII cc.) underwent a change that is called the Great Vowel Shift. Due to this change the vowels became narrower and more front. E.g.

Middle English	New English
[ā] > [ei] make	make
[ē] > [i:] see	see
[ō] > [ou]ston	stone
[ō] > [u:] roote	root

	moon	moon
[ū] > [au]	hous	house
[ī] > [ai]	time	time
[a] > [æ]	that	that
[u] > [ʌ]	cut	cut
[a] > [o]	was	was
[ai] > [ei]	dai	day
[au] > [o:]	lawe	law
[a] > [a:]	farm	farm
[o] > [o:]	hors	horse

*Saitlərin böyük dəyişməsi; Большой сдвиг гласных.*

**Grimm Jacob** - the German linguist, author of “German Grammar” which was published in 1822. Accordingly the law is also often called Grimm’s law.

*Yakob Qrimm; Якоб Гримм*

**Grimm’s Law** - The changes of consonants in Proto-Germanic were first formulated in terms of a phonetic law by Jacob Grimm in the early 19<sup>th</sup> century. By the terms of Grimm’s Law IE voiceless plosives [p,t,k] developed in Proto-Germanic into voiceless fricatives [f,þ,h], IE voiced plosives [b,d,g] were shifted to voiceless plosives [p,t,k] and IE voiced aspirated plosives [bh,dh,gh] were reflected as pure voiced non-aspirated plosives [b,d,g]. E.g. IE Lat. pater>OE fæder (father); IE Lat. trēs>Goth.þreis (three),etc.

*Qrimm qanuni; закон Гримма*

**the group of Midland (Central) dialects** - it is divided into West Midland and East Midland as two main areas. It was corresponding to the OE Mercian dialect. In ME Midland covered the territory from the Thames to the Welsh speaking area in the West and up to the north of the river Humber.

*Orta ingilis dilinin mərkəzi dialektləri; среднеанглийские центральные диалекты*

## H

**hardening** - The Proto-Germanic voiced consonants [ð] [v] were hardened in OE: PG [ð] > OE [d]; PG [v] > OE [b]: Old Icel. Gōðr- OE 3ōd (NE good).

**Samit qalınlaşması; отвердение согласных**

**haplology** - the loss of a sound because of its similarity to a neighbouring sound. E.g. Modern English “England” from Old English “En3laland” (land of the Angles)”.

**Haplologiya; заплогия**

“**Hastings**” - At the beginning of Norman Conquest in the battle of Hastings fought in October 1066, the English were defeated. This date is known as the date of the Norman Conquest. The Normans occupied all the important posts in the church, in the government and in the army.

**Hastinq döyüşü, Norman işğalının başlanğıcı; Битва у Гастингса, начало Нормандского завоевания**

**Henry VII (1457-1509; reigned 1485-1509)** - The 30-year contest for the possession of the crown ended in the establishment of a strong royal power under Henry VII, the founder of the Tudor dynasty. He reduced the power of the old nobles and created a new aristocracy out of the royal and town bourgeoisie.

**VII Henri; Генрих VII**

**Henry VIII (1491-1547; reigned 1509-1547)** a successor, who quarrelled with the Pope, declared himself head of the English church and dissolved the monasteries .

**VIII Henri; Генрих VIII**

**hieroglyphic writing** – writing consisting of characters pictorializing the thing represented by the word they stand for.

**İeroqlif yazısı; иероглиф**

**High German** – comprises of Old High German (before 1100), Middle High German (1100-1500), and Modern High German (since 1500). High German, especially as spoken in the midlands and used in the imperial chancery, was popularized by Luther’s translation of the Bible into it

(1522-1532).

*Yuxarı alman dialekti; Верхненемецкий диалект*

**historical lexicology** – deals with the development of the vocabulary of a language, sources of borrowings, changes in the meanings of words, etc.

*Tarixi leksikologiya; историческая лексикология*

**historical morphology** – the branch of the history of a language which studies changes and development of the morphological structure of a language through the history.

*Tarixi morfologiya; историческая морфология*

**historical phonetics** - one of the branches of the history of a language which deals with the development and changes of phonetic elements, vowels and consonants of a language through the history.

*Tarixi fonetika; историческая фонетика*

**historical syntax** – one of the subdivisions of the history of the language which deals with the historical changes of the syntactical structure of a language (word order, types of sentences, phrases, parts of a sentence).

*Tarixi sintaksis; исторический синтаксис*

**homonymous forms** – the OE noun paradigms neutralised some of the grammatical oppositions: similar endings employed in different declensions as well as the influence of some types upon other types disrupted the grouping of words into morphological classes. E.g. OE “-an” was - 1) the plural ending of weak declension nouns (naman “names”); 2) infinitive ending (settan “to set”); 3) adverb ending (norþan “from the north”).

*Omonim formalari; омонимические формы*

**hybrid** – a word composed of elements from different languages. E.g. in OE place-names: Manchester < Man (Celtic)+ chester (Latin); Yorkshire < york (Celtic) + shire (Germanic).

*Hibrid (söz); гибридное слово*

## I

**the Icelandic language** - It belongs to the Germanic group and developed as a separate language in spite of the political dependence of Iceland upon Denmark and the dominance of Danish in official spheres. Modern Icelandic is very much like Old Icelandic and Old Norse. At present Icelandic is spoken by over 200.000 people.

**Ísland dili; исландский язык**

**incorporating language** - said of a language that uses long word forms with a complex morphology.

**İnkorporlaşan dil; инкорпорирующий язык**

**indefinite**- opposed to **definite**.

**Qeyri-müəyyən; неопределенный**

**indefiniteness** - opposed to **definiteness**, typically designating an unidentified, generic or unfamiliar person or thing: e.g. in OE *zōd mann* “zōd (good)” expresses indefiniteness as it is used without any defining word or a demonstrative pronoun.

**Qeyri-müəyyənlik; неопределенность**

**independent change (non-assimilative change)** – the change independent of environment in which the given sound was found. E.g.

Common Germanic		Old English
ai	>	ā
a	>	æ, etc.

**Müstəqil dəyişmə; независимое изменение**

**independent qualitative change** - e.g. Great Vowel Shift.

**Müstəqil keyfiyyət dəyişməsi; независимое качественное изменение**

**Indo-European languages** - languages which are related and which are supposed to have had a common ancestor language called “Proto Indo-European”. This family includes language groups, such as Germanic group, Slavonic group, etc. It is believed that all the Indo-



European languages are descended from one language spoken around 4,000 BC.

***Hind-Avropa dilləri; индоевропейские языки***

***infinitive and participial constructions*** - the accusative with the Infinitive construction occurs in OE, although it is much rarer than its counterpart, the Objective with the Infinitive construction in Modern English. The datival infinitive (which ended in –“enne” and was always preceded by the preposition *tō*) is used in certain constructions to express purpose or direction: *hīe cōmon þæt land tō scēawienne* “they came to view the land”; Participial constructions resembling the modern Objective and Nominative Absolute Participial Constructions also occur occasionally in OE texts.

***Məsdər və feli sifət tərkibləri; инфинитивная и причастная конструкции***

***infix*** - a derivational or inflectional affix appearing in the body of a word.

***Daxili şəkilçi; инфикс***

***inflected parts of speech*** - as far as grammar is concerned, OE was “an inflected or synthetic” language, with a well developed system of morphological categories especially in the noun and adjective and with an elaborate grouping of all inflected parts of speech into morphological classes. E.g. OE nouns: *stānas, stāna, stānum*.

***Şəkilçili nitq hissələri; изменяемые части речи с окончаниями***

***inflecting (fusional) language*** - a language in which the form of a word changes to show a change in meaning or grammatical function. Often there is no clear distinction between the basic (form) part of the word and the part which shows a grammatical function, such as number or tense. E.g. mice (mouse+plural), came (come+past tense). Greek and Latin are inflecting languages.

***Flektiv dil; флективный язык***

***inflection*** - the ending of the form that words undergo to mark such distinctions as those of case, gender, number, tense, person, mood or voice: a form, suffix or element involved in such variation. E.g. OE *fiscas*, *fisce*, *fiscum* (fishes).

***Şəkilçi; флексия***

***influence*** - phenomenon exerted in different aspects of English by another language. E.g. early OE borrowings were of Latin influence.

***Latin influence, latin təsiri; латинское влияние***

***Scandinavian influence, skandinav təsiri; скандинавское влияние***

***French influence, Fransız təsiri; французское влияние***

***inkhorn*** - the wholesale introduction of Greek and Latin words did not take place without an opposition. The use of learned words from the classical languages, so-called “inkhorn terms” were considered pedantic and ridiculed by many English scholars of the mid-16<sup>th</sup> century. Such words as “affability, ingenious, capacity, celebrate, illustrate, superiority, fertile, native, confidence” were objected.

***Anlaşılmaz terminlər; мудренные (заумные) термины***

***inner history of the language*** - the description of the changes in the language itself, its grammar, phonetics, vocabulary or spelling.

***Dilin daxili tarixi; внутренняя история языка***

***instrumental case*** - distinct from the dative case for OE demonstrative pronouns and for strong adjectives. It is used to indicate the thing or person by means of which the action of the verb is accomplished. E.g. Instr. *þū*, *þon* (demonstrative pronoun singular of “*sē*” and “*þæt*”), *þys*, *þis* (demonstrative pronoun of “*þes*” and “*þis*”); *zōde* (strong adjective in the masculine and neuter singular).

***Instrumental hal; инструментальный падеж.***

***internal flexion*** - Traces of umlaut or mutation can be seen in form-building and word-building as a kind of internal flexion. E.g. OHG. Gast (guest) - gesti (guests); man (man)- mennis (human).

***Daxili şəkilçi; внутренняя флексия***

***internal sources: morphological, morphological-syntactical, semantic*** – growth from within, i.e. from existing: a) morphological (limited to affixation in OE); b) morphological-syntactical (limited to word composition); c) semantic (extension, narrowing of meaning, metaphor, metonymy).

***Daxili tənbələr; внутренние источники***

***intervocal position*** - position of a consonant between two vowels: OE letters f, s, þ, ð could denote voiced consonants in intervocal position. E.g. oþer, oðer [ð] “other”, āriſan [z] “arise”.

***Saitlərarası mövqe; интервокальная позиция***

***intransitive (verb)*** - A verb that cannot take a direct object.

E.g. the verb “faran” is intransitive in the Old English sentence “þā fōr hē norþryhte (then he travelled right to the North)”.

***Təsisiz fel; непереходный (интранзитивный) глагол***

***introduction of printing*** - it belongs to Early New English and is connected with the first publishing of the book by William Caxton in 1475.

***Kitab çarın başlanması; начало печатания***

***inversion*** - a reserved sequence of elements. E.g. in OE þā com hē on morzenne... “then he came in the morning”.

***Inversiya; инверсия***

***irregular comparison*** - It is characterized by suppletion, an old way of forming the degrees of comparison, besides the inflections “-ra” and “-est/-ost”, forming by means of changing the root of the adjective. It can be illustrated by

the forms of an adjective in other IE languages as well. E.g. German - gut - besser - beste; Russian - хороший, лучший, наилучший. The degree of adjectives formed by means of suppletion in OE are considered to be the survivals among the others. E.g. OE *zōd* - *betera* – *betst* (good – better – best).

*Qaydasız müqayisə; неправильное сравнение*

*isolating language* - a language in which word forms do not change and in which grammatical functions are shown by word order and use of function words.

*Köksözlü dil; изолирующий язык*

## **J**

*John Gower* - an outstanding poet of the 14<sup>th</sup> century. His first poems were written in Anglo-Norman and in Latin. His longest poem “Vox Clamantis” (“The Voice of the Crying in the Wilderness”) is in Latin. His last long poem is in English “Confessio Amantis”(The Lovers of Confession) - a composition of 40,000 octo-syllabic lines.

*Сон Гауер; Джон Гоуер.*

*Julius Caesar (100-44 BC)* - Roman emperor. He led the Roman army which conquered Gaul and in 55 BC invaded Britain for economic and strategic reasons.

*Yuli Sezar; Юлий Цезарь*

*the Jutes* - The Germanic tribes who settled in Kent, the Isle of Wight in 449.

*Yutlar; Юты*

## **K**

*kenning* - a two-member circumlocution for an ordinary noun. Kennings may take the form of a compound word like OE *hrōn-rād* “sea” (lit. “riding-place of the whale”) or of a phrase like “*fuzles wynn*” “feather” (lit. “bird’s joy”). It is widely used in the OE epic “Beowulf”.

*Kenning; кеннинг*

*Kent* - is the kingdom formed by the Jutes in the Old English

period.

***Kent; Кент***

***Kentish dialect*** - a dialect spoken in the area known as Kent in the Isle of Wight. It had developed from the tongue of the Jutes and Frisians.

***Kent dialekti; Кентский диалект***

***Knights of the Round Table*** - the last third of the poem “Brut” is devoted to the mythical British king Arthur and his “Knights of the Round Table”. The poem is written in alliterative verse with a considerable number of rhymes.

***Dəyirmi stol zadəganları; Рыцари круглого стола***

***King Alfred (871- 900)*** - the most famous of all English kings, Alfred of Wessex, who was later called Alfred the Great, came to the throne in 871. Under King Alfred Wessex with its capital Winchester attained a relatively high degree of prosperity and considerable enlightenment.

***Kral Alfred; Король Альфред***

***King James' Bible*** - the Authorized Version produced by a body of translators and officially approved in 1611 among later versions of the Bible.

***Kral Сеумзін Bibliyası; Библия Короля Джеймса***

***Koine*** - the spoken language of a locality or a dialect that has become a standard language in a certain historical period of the language.

***Коуне; Койне***

**L**

***the language of Chaucer*** - Chaucer's literary language, based on the mixed London dialect known as classical ME. In the 15<sup>th</sup> and 16<sup>th</sup> centuries it became the basis of the national literary English language. The language refers to Chaucer's use of the structural arrangement of sounds, morphemes, words, sentences, utterances or writing at Chaucer's time. E.g. final ‘-ed’ was pronounced as a distinct syllable thus ‘bathed, inspired’; final –e sounded a

neutral vowel: swete [ˈswe:tə]; many words of French origin were still stressed on the end: licour [liˈku:r]; in grammar – the common plural inflection of nouns was –es; the demonstrative pronoun ‘tho’ meant ‘those’, etc.

**Çoserin dili; язык Чосера**

**the language of Shakespeare** - W. Shakespeare’s English has all the irregularity and freedom characteristic of the so-called Elizabethan period. It is typical of late 16<sup>th</sup>-century East Midland London English. It has the same flexibility and slackness of spelling, of grammatical usage and word choice that one finds in most of the writers of the period. E.g. the letter ‘r’ stood for a rolled sound, and was pronounced in all positions. The ‘k’ continued to be sounded in such words as knave and knight; in grammar the endings –est and –eth for the 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> persons singular Present Indicative were used; Past Tense forms were used for the Past Participle and vice versa, e.g. broke for broken, took for taken; frequent use of impersonal verbs is noticed in Shakespeare’s English: it likes me well (=I like it very much).

**Şekspirin dili; язык Шекспира**

**language contact** - a situation of prolonged association between the speakers of different languages. E.g. contact between Anglo-Saxon and Norman-French at the beginning of the Middle English period.

**Dil əlaqəsi; языковой контакт**

**language change** - change within a language which takes place over a period of time. All living languages have changed and continue to change. E.g. in Old English the phonetic changes are breaking, palatalization, mutation, etc.

**Dil dəyişməsi; языковое изменение**

**language shift** - a permanent change in a personal choice of language for everyday purpose .

**Dildə əvəzlənmə; языковая смена**

**language variation** – differences in pronunciation, grammar or word choice within a language. Variation in a language may be related to region, to social class and/or to the degree of formality of a situation in which language is used.

***Dildə variantlıq; языковая вариантность***

***Late New English (Modern English), Present-day English -***

The English language of the 19<sup>th</sup> and 20<sup>th</sup> centuries represents the last period in the history of English - Late New English or Modern English.

***Sonuncu yeni ingilis dili dövrü; поздний новоанглийский период***

***Latin (Roman) alphabet*** - a writing system used for many languages, including English. It consists of letters which may represent different sounds or sound combinations in different languages. In Old English the Latin alphabet with its 23 letters was insufficient for rendering all OE sounds. It was made more suitable for the purpose by (1) the adoption of several old runic characters and by (2) making some Latin letters stand for different sounds.

***Latin əlifbası; латинский алфавит***

***Latin elements*** - mainly denote names of household items and products: apple, pear, plum, cheese, pepper, dish, kettle. Words from Romanized Celts: street, wall, mill, tile, port. Objects of Latin material culture: altar, bishop, candle, devil, martyr, monk, pope, psalm. Another major group of Latin borrowings entered English with the revival of learning (15-16<sup>th</sup> centuries). Such words are : antenna - antennae, index - indices, datum - data, stratum - strata, phenomenon - phenomena, axis - axes, formula - formulae. Very many of them have suffixes which clearly mark them as Latin borrowings of the time: (1) verb-forming suffixes in -ate, -ute: aggravate; prosecute; (2) adjective-forming suffixes in- ant, -ent, -ior, -al: reluctant, evident, superior,

cordial.

***Latin ünsürləri; латинские элементы***

***Latin loan-words*** - About 50 words from Latin existed in the dialects of the ancestors of English when they came to Britain. Such early Latin loan-words include, e.g. *stræt* (“road, street” < Lat. *strata* “paved road”), *weall* (“wall”, < Lat. *vallum*), *mill* (mile, < Lat. *milia passum*), *wīn* (“wine” < Lat. *vinum*); *manzere* (“trader, retailer”, < Lat. *manga* “dealer in slaves”) cf. Modern English: *ironmonger*, often pejorative: *scandalmonger*, *warmonger*.

***Latin alınma sözləri; латинские заимствованные слова***

***Latin and Greek borrowings (of the late 15<sup>th</sup> and 16<sup>th</sup> centuries)*** - The Latin or Greek borrowings of the late 15<sup>th</sup> and 16<sup>th</sup> centuries were literary words (although many of them later became everyday words). Some of them are: *atmosphere*, *contempt*, *crisis*, *encyclopedia*, *external*, *frustrate*, *genius*, *gesture*, *habitual*, *immune*, *include*, *incredible*, *individual*, *insane*, *interrupt*, *legal*, *magnify*, *medieval*, *necessary*, *picture*, *polite*, *popular*, *prevent*, *quiet*, *solar*, *submit*, *substitute*, *temporal*, *testimony*, *thermometer*, *tract*, *tribute*.

***Latin və yunan alınma sözləri; латинские и греческие заимствования***

***learned words*** (stylistically distinct words) - They are found in texts of religious, legal, philosophical or scientific characters. Among them there were many borrowings from Latin: *wrēzēndlic* “accusing, denouncing” used in Ælfric’s *Grammar*”.

***Elmi sözlər; ученые слова***

***lengthening*** - is the positional quantitative change which occurred in Early ME: (1) short vowels were lengthened before 2 homorganic consonants, a sonorant and a plosive. E.g. OE *wild* > ME *wild* [wi:ld]; (2) short vowels



became long in open syllables OE wike > ME weke  
[ˈwe:kə] > NE week [wi:k]; open > open [ˈo:pən].

**Sait uzadılması; удлинение**

**lengthening of consonants** - in all West Germanic languages, most consonants were lengthened after a short vowel before [j]. This process is known as “geminatio” or “doubling of consonants”. E.g. fuljan > OE fyllan (N.E.fill).

**Samitlərin uzadılması (qoşalaşması); удвоение согласных**

**lengthening of vowels** - a number of OE sound-changes affected the length of vowels. (1) Short vowels grew longer in certain cases when following consonants disappeared. The disappearance of “m” or “n” before the fricatives [f], [θ], [s] led to the lengthening of the preceding vowel. E.g. OE fif < fimf (“five”, Gothic fimf, Modern German: funf); 3ōs < gans (“goose”, cf. Modern German: Gans); tōþ < tanþ (“tooth”, cf. Latin: dens, dentis; Modern German: Zahn)

**Saitlərin uzadılması; удлинение гласных**

**levelling (merging)** - the process of monophthongisation of most OE diphthongs before [xt, x't]; e.g. OE līehtan > ME lighten > NE lighten [ˈli:xtən].

**Bərabərləşmə; выравнивание**

**lexical ambiguity** - A situation in which a single form has two or more meanings (e.g. a trunk is a ‘piece of luggage’ or an ‘elephant nose’).

**Leksik ikimənalıq; лексическая двусмысленность**

**lexical category** - a category for the elements that are part of the lexicon of a language. The elements are at the word level. E.g. nouns, verbs, adjectives, prepositions.

**Leksik kateqoriya; лексическая категория**

**lexical diffusion** - The process whereby a linguistic change manifests itself first in a few words and then gradually

spreads through the vocabulary of the language.

**Leksik diffuziya; лексическая диффузия**

**lexical field (semantic field)** - the organization of related words and expressions into a system which shows their relationship to one another. E.g. kinship terms such as father, mother, brother, sister, uncle, aunt belong to a lexical field whose relevant features include generation, sex, membership of the father's and mother's side of the family, etc.

**Leksik sahə, semantik sahə; лексическое поле, семантическое поле**

**lexicon** - the set of all the words and idioms of any language.

**Lügət tərkiibi, leksikon; лексикон**

**lexis** - the vocabulary of a language in contrast to its grammar.

**Leksika, lügət tərkiibi; лексика**

**ligature** - a printed or written character consisting of two or more letters or characters joined together; e.g. OE "æ". See also **digraph**

**Liqatur; лигатура**

**linguistic evolution/ change** - also **historical development of the language** is the process of a diversion of the language from its ancestor till the modern variant of it. It includes (a) internal linguistic history, which is the structural development of phonetic (phonological), morphological, syntactical and lexical linguistic levels of the language; (b) external history includes many facts which pertain to the functioning of the language in the speech community.

**Dil təkamülü / dəyişməsi; языковая эволюция, языковое изменение**

**linguistic form** - a meaningful unit of speech (as a morpheme, word or sentence).

**Dil forması; лингвистическая форма**

**linguistic variables** - Different observations are made of the way in which different kinds of people speak in different social settings. The parameters along which these

differences can be plotted are known as linguistic variables.

***Dil dəyişmələri; лингвистические изменения***

***loan-translation*** - See also *calque*.

***loan word*** - that is borrowed from one language into another (e.g. the words “poodle” and “kindergarten” were borrowed into English from German).

***Alınma söz; заимствованное слово***

***local (regional) dialect*** - In the second historical period (8<sup>th</sup> – 11<sup>th</sup> centuries) of Old English the tribal dialects changed gradually into local or regional dialects. Towards the end of that period the differences between the dialects grew and their relative position altered.

***Yerli (ərazi) dialekt; региональный диалект***

***locative (case)*** - thematic role of the noun phrase that specifies a place or location.

***Yerlik hal; локативный падеж***

***London Cockney (in the 16<sup>th</sup> c.)*** - Cockney dialect was used as a form of oral speech by the lower ranks of the Londoners throughout the New English period.

***Londonun Kokni dialekti; Лондонский диалект Кокни***

***loss of case distinctions*** - the number of OE cases in the noun paradigm was reduced from 4 (Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative) to 2 (Common, Genitive) in Late ME and NE. The reduction in the number of cases was linked up with a change in the meanings and functions of the surviving forms.

***Hal fərqlərinin itməsi (aradan qaldırılması); потеря надежных различий***

***loss of consonants*** - nasal consonants were lost before fricative consonants in West Germanic and Early Old English. E.g. Goth. fimf, OIcel fimf, OHG Fimf OE fif (NE. five); In ME and Early NE [ho'nu:r] > [‘onə] honour; ME hit >NE it.

***Saitlərin düşməsi; выпадение согласных***

***loss of an inflected form*** - In ME the infinitive lost its inflected form. E.g. in the so-called “dative case” OE wriþan >ME (to) writenne >NE (to) write. The preposition tō, which was placed in OE before the inflected infinitive to show direction or purpose, lost its prepositional force and changed into a marker of the infinitive.

***Şəkilçinin düşməsi; потеря окончания***

***the loss of inflectional endings*** - In ME all the vowels in the endings were reduced to the neutral [ə] and many consonants were levelled under -n or dropped. The process of levelling besides phonetic weakening implies replacement of inflections by analogy.

***Sonluqların düşməsi; потеря окончаний***

***loss of vowels*** - In OE some short vowels in final unstressed syllables were dropped. The vowels [i] and [u] were lost after a syllable containing a long vowel or a short vowel followed by more than one consonant. E.g. OE scipu (ships)

***Saitlərin düşməsi; потеря гласного***

***Low Germanic*** - accordingly in earlier times we distinguished as Low Germanic tongues Old Saxon, Old Low Franconian, Old Frisian and Old English.

***Aşağı german (dilləri); нижнегерманские (языки)***

***Low German dialect*** - the name High Germanic as contrasted to Low Germanic – a name applied to the West Germanic tribes in the low-lying northern areas. From that time on Low German and High German dialects appeared.

***Aşağı alman dialekti; нижненемецкий диалект***

**M**

***marker of the past tense*** - the dental suffix [θ,d] is a marker of the Past Tense and Participle II; it is preceded by a remnant of the old stem-suffixes: -i- in the Goth. *domida*, -o- in OE *macode*.

***Keçmiş zaman göstəricisi; маркер прошедшего времени masculine*** - the gender that ordinarily includes most words or grammatical forms referring to males. E.g. OE nouns *fæder* “father”, *broþor* “brother”; OE personal pronoun “*hē*”, demonstrative pronoun “*sē*” (this).

***Kişi cinsi; мужской род***

***Mercia*** - the kingdom formed by the Angles in the centre of England by 600 AD.

***Mersiya; Мерсия***

***Mercian dialect*** - OE dialect, derived from the speech of southern Angles, one of the West Germanic tribes and spoken chiefly in the kingdom of Mercia.

***Mersiya dialekti; Мерсийский диалект***

***merger or coalescence*** - two sounds become one. E.g. Old English [e:] and [æ] which became Modern English [i:], as in *sweet* (OE *swēte*) and *clean* (OE *clæne*).

***Qovuşma; слияние***

***merging (of OE cases)*** - a linguistic change, which means an instance of neutralization or loss of oppositions between formerly contrasted linguistic units. When three of OE cases (Nominative, Dative, Accusative) merged into the Common case, the opposition between them was neutralized or lost.

***Halların qovuşması; слияние надежд***

***metaphor*** - figure of speech containing an implied comparison based on the perception of a similarity between distinct objects or actions. E.g. in OE poetry “*brēost-hord*” “treasure of the breast” expressed “heart”.

***Metafora; метафора***

***metathesis*** - a transposition of two phonemes or letters in a word. E.g. in OE *þridda* > *þirda* “third”; *rinnan* > *irnan*, *iernan* “run”; *hros* > *hors* “horse”.

***Yerdəyişmə, metateza; метатеза (перестановка)***

***ME - Middle English*** - See *periodization*. In Early ME the

differences between the regional dialects grew and they were mainly characterized by such historical events, as the Scandinavian invasion and the Norman Conquest.

**Orta ingilis dili dövrü; среднеанглийский период**

**Middle English dialects** - In the 14<sup>th</sup> and 15<sup>th</sup> centuries grouping of local dialects are: (1) the Southern group, including Kentish and the South-Western dialects, (2) the Midland group with its subdivisions and (3) the Northern group. The history of the London dialect reveals the sources of the literary language in Late ME and also the main source and basis of the literary Standard.

**Orta ingilis dili dövrünün dialektləri;**

**среднеанглийские диалекты**

**morpheme boundary** - the boundary between two morphemes; e.g. in OE sun-u (son), dur-u (door).

**Morfem sərhədi; морфемная граница**

**morphological typology** - the categorization of a language, according to which words in the language are clearly divisible into individual morphemes.

**Morfoloji tipologiya; морфологическая типология**

**multilingual** - a person who knows and uses three or more languages.

**Çoxdilli; многоязычный**

**mutation** – (metaphony) the qualitative change of Old English vowels in two kinds: 1) **palatal mutation, i-mutation, I-Umlaut** or **front mutation** occurred somewhere during the 6<sup>th</sup> –7<sup>th</sup> centuries. The process affected Germanic words where a vowel in a stressed syllable was immediately followed by the sound [i] or [j] in the next syllable: a>e stronziþu > strenzþu (strength); æ>e tælian > tellan (to tell); ā >æ hālian > hælan (to heal). As a result of palatal mutation new phonemes entered the vowel system in Old English - the vowel phoneme [y] and [ÿ], the result of the mutation of [u] and [ū], respectively. Ea > ie ealdira>ieldra

(elder); Ēa>īe ʒelēafian>ʒeliefan (to believe); Gothic: kuni>OE cynn (kin).2) **Back-mutation** is a sound change in a word due to the influence of adjacent morpheme. E.g. OE dæʒ (singular) “day” – dazas (plural) “days”.

**Umlaut; умляут, вокалическая инфлексия, мутация**

N

**natural gender** - It is defined by the lexical meaning of a noun. E.g. names of male beings referred to as “he” are regarded as masculine, those of female beings referred to as “she” are considered feminine, while names of inanimate things and abstract notions and often names of animals are neuter. The grammatical gender does not always coincide with the natural gender of the person and sometimes even contradicts it. Thus, for instance, the OE noun “wifman (woman)” was declined as masculine. Cf.: stān “stone”(masculine), bān “bone”(neuter), cwēn “queen”(feminine) which belong to different genders, but have similar forms.

**Təbii (leksik) cins; естественный род**

**negation** - a morphosyntactic operation in which a lexical item denies or inverts the meaning of another lexical item or construction. Negative words in OE are freely used, their member in a sentence not being limited. E.g. nān man ne būde benorðan “nobody lived to the north.” It contradicts the meaning of part of the meaning of a sentence. E.g. The main negator in Old English is often in a contracted form: nis = ne+is, nān = ne+ān.

**Īnkar; отрицание**

**Netherlandish** - The modern language of the Netherlands, formerly called Dutch, and its variant in Belgium, known as the Flemish dialect, are now treated as a single language.

**Holland dili; голландский язык**

**neuter gender** - a grammatical gender that includes those

nouns having referent, which do not have distinction.  
Nouns of neuter gender in Old English denoted living beings (hors “horse”), lifeless things (scip “ship”), abstract notions (mōd “mood”).

**Орта cins; средний род**

**neutral words** - words characterised by the highest frequency of occurrence, in word-formation and historical stability. E.g. OE stān “stone”, drincan “to drink”, etc. Most words of this group are of native origin.

**Neutral sözlər; нейтральная лексика**

**neutralization (loss of oppositions)** - the phenomenon when three OE cases - Nominative, Accusative, Genitive merged into the Common case in ME.

**Neutrallaşma; нейтрализация**

**nominal** – 1) a term used instead of a noun; 2) a term for a linguistic unit which has some, but not all characteristics of a noun; e.g. “wounded” in the sentence “the wounded were taken by helicopter to the hospital”. Although “wounded” is the head of the noun phrase, “the wounded” is preceded by an article, it would not be modified by an adjective, but by an adverb; e.g. the seriously wounded.

**Nominal, ad bildirən, ismi; номинативный, именной**

**nominal declension** - the weak declension of Old English adjectives is nominal. It has the same markers as in nouns of “n-stem” except that in the Genitive plural the pronominal “-ra” is used instead of the nominal “-ena”. E.g. blindra “blind”.

**Nominal hallanma; номинальное (именное) склонение**

**nominal grammatical categories** - Number, gender, case, degrees of comparison, category of definiteness and indefiniteness are of these categories. The noun in OE had only 3 grammatical categories. Proper number (singular and plural), case (Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative) and gender (masculine, feminine, neuter). The



adjective had the maximum number of categories - 5 (case, gender, number, degree of comparison, definiteness/ indefiniteness. 5 cases for strong adjectives (Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Instrumental). The 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> Personal pronouns unlike other parts of speech had 3 numbers - singular, plural and dual.

***Nominal (ismə xas) grammatik kateqoriyaları; именные грамматические категории***

***nominal system*** - there were five declinable parts of speech in Old English: the noun, the pronoun, the adjective, the numeral, the participle. The nominal paradigm in Old English was characterized by such grammatical categories as case, number and gender.

***Nominal sistem, система именных частей речи***

***nominative case*** - the form of a noun phrase which usually shows that the noun or noun phrase can function as the subject of the sentence. The nominative case is most commonly used for the subject of a sentence and for the subject complement. E.g. in OE Ohthere sæde (Ohthere said).

***Adlıq hal; именительный падеж***

***the age of Normalization*** - (mid 17<sup>th</sup> century - close to the 18<sup>th</sup> century) the period when literary (standard) norms were established. This age witnessed the establishment of "norms", which can be defined as Received Standard recognised as correct at the given period. During the 18<sup>th</sup> century Literary English differentiated into distinct styles.

***Normalization period; ədəbi normaların təşəkkülü***

***dövrü;***

***период возникновения литературных норм.***

***Norman Conquest*** - In 1066 the Norman Duke William, profiting by the weakness of King Harold who succeeded King Edward on the English throne, invaded England. In a

battle of Hastings on October 14, 1066 he managed to defeat Harold and proclaimed himself King of England. The Norman conquest had far-reaching consequences for the English people and the English language.

*Norman iſgali; нормандское завоевание*

**North Germanic Group** - it includes Old Norwegian, Old Danish, Old Swedish, Old Icelandic.

*Œimali german dillərinin yarımqrupu; севернегерманская подqrуппа*

**the Northern dialects** - they had developed from OE Northumbrian. In Early ME they included several provincial dialects. E.g. The Yorkshire and the Lancashire dialects and also what later became known as Scottish.

*Œimali dialektlər; северные диалекты*

**Northumbria** - a kingdom formed by the Angles mainly to the North of the river Humber.

*Nortumbriya krallıđı; Нортумбрийское королевство*

**Northumbrian dialect** - OE dialect spoken by the Angles in the north of the river Humber.

*Nortumbrian dialekti; нортумбрийский диалект*

**the Norwegian language** - one of the western groups of Scandinavian languages. The earliest written records in Old Norwegian date from the 13<sup>th</sup> century. Norwegian was the last to develop into an independent national language. During the period of Danish dominance Norwegian intermixed with Danish.

*Norveç dili; норвежский язык*

**noun-forming suffixes in OE** – 1. Personal -ere: fiſcere (fisherman), writere (writer); 2. Abstract noun-forming suffixes: -nes: Ʒōdnes; -unƷ/-inƷ rædinƷ “reading”; -ſcipe: freondſcipe “friendship”: dōm: wiſdom, -hād: cildhād: “childhood”.

*Qədim ingilis dilində isim düzəldən ſuffikslər;*

*древнеанглийские суффиксы образующие существительные*

**number** - the grammatical category that expresses such contrasts as singular, plural and dual. E.g. in OE the first personal pronoun had three numbers: ic “I”(singular) - wē “we”(plural) - wit “we both”(dual).

**Кәтиүүәт; количество**

## O

**obsolescent / obsolete** - when a word or sense ceases to be used, it is said to be obsolescent or obsolete. This often happens, because an object or concept is no longer of value to a community (other than to the historian or literary scholar); but a word or sense may become obsolescent if it develops unpleasant associations or is replaced by another word which is felt to be more modern. Wight “person”, leman “sweetheart”, and hie “hasten” are examples from Elizabethan English which are now no longer used; humor “temperament” and conceit “idea” illustrate obsolete senses from the same period.

**Köhnəlmış (söz və ya təfhum); устаревшее (слово или понятие)**

**Old English** - the period from the 5<sup>th</sup> till the 11<sup>th</sup> centuries (449-1100). It was a transitional period from the tribal and slave-owning system to feudalism. See **Periodization**

**Qədim İngilis dili dövrü; древнеанглийский период**

**Ormulum** - it was composed by the monk Orm in 1200 in the North-East Midland dialect. It has an outstanding feature of the spelling devised by the author.

**Ormulum; Ормулум**

**the outer history (of the language)** - the description of events in the history of the people speaking this language, i.e. the history of the people reflected in their language.

**Dilxarici tarix; история экстралингвистических фактов**

## P

**palatalization** - the raising of the front upper surface of the tongue towards the hard palate at the top of the mouth. Palatalization of speech sounds may occur when the sound is followed by a closed front vowel such as [i].

**Palatallaşma; палатализация**

**palatalization of the consonants** - when “c, c3, sc”- occurred in an initial position before a front vowel or finally after a front vowel led to the following development in Late Old English and Early Middle English. E.g. [kj]>[tʃ] - OE cild [kji:ld]>EME child [tʃi:ld]; [skj]>[ʃ] - OE scip [skjip]>EME ship [ʃip]; [gj]>[dʒ] - OE ec3 [egig]> EME edge [edʒ].

**Samitlərin yumşalması; палатализация (смягчение согласных)**

**palatalization or fronting of a back vowel** - the principal regular direction of the change [a]> [æ] and [a:]>[æ:] is referred to as palatalization of [a, a:], in OE: dohtor> dehter (daughter).

**Dilarxası saitın incələşməsi; палатализация заднеязычного гласного**

**palatalization of vowels** - vowels preceded by an initial palatal consonant “ç, c” or the consonant combination “sc” were diphthongized in OE. As a result of palatalization e>ie, æ>ea, o>eo, etc. as in ziefan “to give (<zefan), zeat “gate” (<zæt), sceort “short” (<scort).

**Saitlərin incələnməsi; палатализация гласных**

**palatal mutation** – see *mutation*

**paradigm** - the ordered list of all the inflectional forms of a declension or a verb conjugation in the language.

**Paradiqma; парадигма**

**paradigm of declension** - Old English was a highly inflected language. The abundance of inflections resulted from the fact that the paradigm of declension was formed by case

endings. E.g. nama “name”, naman “names”, namena “of the names”.

***Hal paradigması; надежная парадигма***

***paradigm of a verb conjugation*** - It is a set of inflectional forms of verbs in grammatical categories of tense, number and person. E.g. in OE ic write (I write), hēo writeþ (she writes), hīe writaþ (they write); writan “to write”, writen “written”.

***Felin təsriflənntə paradigması; парадигма глагольного спряжения***

***paradigmatic*** - showing the forms which a word can have in a grammatical system. Paradigms typically show a word’s inflections rather than its derivatives.

***Paradigmatik; парадигматический***

***parent language*** - a common language from which other languages descend. E.g. Proto-Germanic or Primitive Teutonic languages for English, German, Icelandic, etc.

***Ulu dil; праязык***

***pejoration*** - the worsening of the meaning of a word through a semantic change. The opposite of amelioration. E.g. OE snafa “child, youth”. Modern English: knave “rascal, rogue”.

***Mənanın pisləşməsi; ухудшение значения***

***periodization*** - division of history of the English language into periods: the 1<sup>st</sup> - Pre-written or Pre-historical period termed Early OE (5<sup>th</sup> - to 7<sup>th</sup> centuries); the 2<sup>nd</sup> - Old English or Anglo-Saxon, Written OE (8<sup>th</sup> -11<sup>th</sup> centuries); the 3<sup>rd</sup> - Early Middle English (12<sup>th</sup> -14<sup>th</sup> centuries); the 4<sup>th</sup> - Late or Classical Middle English (14<sup>th</sup> - 15<sup>th</sup> centuries); the 5<sup>th</sup> - Early New English (1475-1660) - Literary Renaissance; the 6<sup>th</sup> – the Period of Normalization and Correctness”- the Neo-Classical period (17<sup>th</sup> -18<sup>th</sup> centuries); the 7<sup>th</sup> - Late New English or Modern English (19<sup>th</sup> -20<sup>th</sup> centuries).

- Dövrələr üzrə bölgü; периодизация***  
***period of fixing the pronunciation*** - The 18<sup>th</sup> century has been called the period of fixing the pronunciation. The great sound shifts were over and the pronunciation was being stabilized.
- Tələffüzün sabitləşməsi dövrü; период стабилизации произношения***  
***period of full endings*** - Henry Sweet, an English scholar of the late 19<sup>th</sup> century, called Old English “period of full endings” in comparison with later periods. OE was a synthetic language with the grouping of all inflected parts of speech in morphological classes.
- Tam sonluqlu dövr; период полных окончаний***  
***period of levelled endings*** - H. Sweet called Middle English “the period of levelled endings”. Most of the inflections in the nominal and verbal categories were weakened and fell together.
- Zəiflənmiş sonluqlu dövr; период невелированных окончаний***  
***period of lost endings*** - the loss of most inflectional endings in the 15<sup>th</sup> century justifies the definition “period of lost endings” given to the New English period by H.Sweet.
- Sonluqları itirilmiş dövr; период потерянных окончаний***  
***period of transition*** - the fifth period - Early New English which lasted from the introduction of printing to the age of Shakespeare (1475-1660) is a sort of transition between two outstanding epochs of literary efflorescence: the age of Chaucer and the age of Shakespeare (Literary Renaissance).
- Keçid dövrü; период перехода***  
***phonetic spelling (writing)*** - a spelling system that represents speech sounds in a one-to-one way. E.g. in OE *cild* [kild] “child”, *hwæt* [hwæt] “what”, *man* [man] “man”.

***Fonetik yazı; фонетическое письмо***

***phonological shift*** — a historical change in which a series of phonemes is systematically modified so that their organization with respect to each other changes (e.g. the Great Vowel Shift).

***Fonoloji dəyişmə; фонологический сдвиг***

***Pytheas from Massilia (Marseilles)*** - a Greek historian and astronomer of the 4<sup>th</sup> BC.

***Piteas; Питеас***

***Pliny the Elder*** - a prominent Roman scientist and writer in the 1<sup>st</sup> century AD in Natural History who made a classified list of Germanic tribes grouping.

***Plini; Плиния***

***poetic diction*** - a characteristic feature of OE verse is its peculiar and rich poetic vocabulary. E.g. 37 near-synonyms denoting a warrior, 30 words for the sea, 27 for “ship”, 12 for “battle” have been recorded in OE verse. Such words are generally compounds: the sea is referred to as the home of the whale, the realm of the monsters, the sea-fowl’s bath, the monster house, etc.

***Poetik sözlər; поэтизмы***

***Polychronicon*** - written by R. Higdon. John de Trevisa of Cornwall completed the translation of seven books from Latin into the South-Western dialect of English in 1387.

***Polikronikon; Поликроникон***

***polysynthetic (language)*** - a language that makes extensive use of polymorphemic words (i.e. words made up of a root and one or more affixes); but that is more complex than an agglutinating or fusional language in terms of the number of morphemes it can combine.

***Polisintetik dil; полисинтетический язык***

***possessive*** - a linguistic form that indicates possession.

***Yiyəlik; притяжательный***

***possessive case*** - a grammatical case that denotes ownership or

a relation analogous to ownership. See *genitive*

*Yiyəlik hal; притяжательный падеж*

*paston letters* - the earliest collection of letters written between 1430-1470.

*Paston məktubları; Пастонские письма*

*pre-written period* – the first period of Old English which covers V –VII centuries. In this period the runic alphabet was composed by Germanic scribes in the II-III centuries AD. Inscriptions were made on wood, stones and bones. The word “rune” meant “mystery”. Among the Old English inscriptions we generally mention two: “Franks’ Casket” and “Ruthwell Cross”.

*Yazıya qədərki olan dövr; дописьменный период*

*prefix* - a letter or group of letters which are added to the beginning of a word and which change the meaning or function of a word. Some are verbal, others are nominal (confined to nouns and adjectives). E.g. ā-, be-, for-, 3e-, mis-, of-, on-, tō-, un-, wip-: ārisan “to arise”, besettan “to beset, surround”, zefēra “fellow-traveller companion” (< faran “to travel”), misdæd “misdeed”, wipstandan “to withstand, oppose”.

*Ön şəkilçi; префикс*

*prepositional government* - Some OE prepositions govern the accusative, such as þurh “through”, ymb “about, concerning”, others take the dative, such as æfter “after”, æt “at”, be “by”, for “for”, from “from”, tō “to”, etc.

*Sözönlü idarə əlaqəsi; предложное управление*

*preterite-present verb* (witan, āzan, duzan, unnan, cunnan, þurfan, sculan, munan, mazan) In OE there were 12 preterite-present verbs. Most of them didn’t indicate actions, but expressed a kind of attitude to an action denoted by the infinitive which followed the preterite-present. They were used like modal verbs and developed into modern modal verbs.



**“Keçmiş-indiki» zamanlı fel qrupu; претерито-презентные глаголы**

**Proclamation-** Proclamation of King Henry III is the Early Middle English record published in French and in the South-Western dialects of English in 1258.

**III Henrinin «Müraciətnaməsi»; “Воззвание” короля Генриха III**

**progressive assimilation(Common Germanic mutation)** - The instances of progressive assimilation were Common Germanic mutations which occurred in Late Proto-Germanic before its disintegration. E.g. before the nasal [n] and before [i] in the next syllable the short [e], [i] and [u] remained or became closed. Non-Germanic Latin: “Ventus” – Gothic: “winds”, OE “wind”. The conditioning factor precedes the affected sound.

**İrəli assimilyasiya; прогрессивная ассимиляция**

**pronominal** - an item that functions as a pronoun. E.g. in OE the strong declension of adjectives was also called pronominal, as they were declined like demonstrative pronouns.

**Pronominal; ; прономинальный**

**pronominal declension** - is also called strong declension of adjectives. Some endings in the strong declension of adjectives have no parallels in the noun paradigms. They are similar to the endings of pronouns: “-um” for Dative singular, “-ne” for Accusative singular masculine, [r] in some feminine and plural endings.

**Pronominal hallanma; местоименное склонение (прономинальное)**

**pronominal ending (OE adjectives, the Genitive plural-ra)** - The strong declension of adjectives uses the same markers as n-stems of nouns except that in the Genitive plural. The pronominal ending “-ra” is often used instead of the weak “-ena” : blindra (“blind”).

**Əvəzlik şəkilçisi; местоименное окончание**

**pronominal paradigm** - It involves grammatical categories of pronouns distinguished in gender, number and case. E.g. in OE hē (masculine), hēo (feminine), hit (neuter).

**Pronominal (əvəzlik kimi) paradiqma; прономинальная (местоименная) парадигма**

**prothesis** - the introduction of an extra initial sound. E.g. Latin: schola “school”, Spanish “escuela”, Old French “escole”, etc.

**Proteza; протеза**

**proto** - when used with a language name it designates a reconstructed language rather than an attested one. E.g. Proto-Indo-European, Proto-Germanic, etc.

**Proto-, ulu; прото-**

**proto-form** - The form that is reconstructed as the source of cognate words in related languages.

**Protoform, ilkin forma; протоформа**

**proto-language** - an unattested ancestral language from which one or more later languages are assumed to have developed.

**Ulu dil; праязык**

**Proto-germanic** - Common or Primitive Germanic, Primitive Teutonic, PG parent language. PG is a linguistic ancestor of the Germanic group. It is supposed to have split from related Indo-European tongues between the 15<sup>th</sup> and 10<sup>th</sup> centuries BC. PG is entirely a pre-historical language of the Germanic group, the appearance of what is known as Primitive Germanic.

**Ulu german; протогерманский**

**R**

**reduced vowel** – It is the so-called neutral vowel [ə] which often appears as a weakly articulated variant of a vowel in an unstressed position.

**Zəifləşmiş sait; редуцированный гласный**

**reduplicative (affix)** - a morphological process that repeats all or part of the stem to which it is attached.

**Reduplikativ (cütləşən) şəkilçi (affiks); удвоенный аффикс**

**reduplication** - addition of an extra syllable including the initial consonant of the infinitive. E.g. the 7<sup>th</sup> class of OE strong verbs is formed by the so-called reduplicating verbs: hatan “to call” - heht (Gothic; haihait) by the repetition of ‘h’.

**Reduplikasiya; редупликация (удвоение)**

**regional dialect** – the regional Middle English dialects had developed from OE dialects. The following dialect groups can be distinguished in Early Middle English: the Southern, Midland and Northern.

**Yerli dialekt; местный диалект**

**regressive assimilation** - A phonological process in which one or more features of a sound are modified due to the influence of a following sound, i.e. the direction of the influence is “backward” to a preceding segment.

**Geri assimilyasiya; регрессивная ассимиляция**

**replacement** - a process that substitutes one non-morphemic segment for another. E.g. foot - feet and sing - sang in English.

**Əvəzetmə; замещение**

**rhotacism** - a linguistic phenomenon in several Indo-European languages where an intervocalic [s] becomes [r]. E.g. Old English wæs – wæron > werēn > werē [s>z>r]

**Rotasizm; ротацизм**

**Robert Cawdrey** – author of the first English-English explanatory dictionary issued in 1604.

**Robert Kodri; Роберт Кодру**

**Robert Lowth** - a theologian and professor of poetry at Oxford who published in 1762 one of the most influential grammar books “A Short Introduction to English

Grammar”.

**Robert Laut; Роберт Лайт**

**romanized Celts** - at the time of the Germanic invasion Britain was inhabited by the so-called “romanized Celts”, who had lived under the Roman rule for four centuries and had acquired Roman culture and ways of life, whose language had undergone certain changes mainly in the form of borrowings from the Latin language.

**Romanlaşmış Keltlər; романизированные Кельты**

**root** - the core of a word, minus affixes or inflections which bears the basic meaning of that word. E.g. in OE stānas (stones) “stān” (stone) is the root of the noun.

**Kök; корень**

**root-stem declension** - some groups of nouns had a “zero-inflection” in the Nominative plural; they are usually termed “root-stems” and are grouped together with consonantal stems, as their roots ended in consonants . E.g. OE fōt-fēt “foot-feet”, mūs-mȳs “mouse-mice”.

**Kök əsaslı hallanma; склонение существительных с корневыми основами**

**runes** - originally meant “secret, mystery”. The runes were used as letters and each symbol indicated a separate sound: “þ” denoting the sound [θ] and [ð] was called “thorn” and could stand for OE þorn (NE thorn).

**Run işarələri; руна**

**runic alphabet** - (runic inscriptions, runic letters) a specifically Germanic alphabet not to be found in languages of other groups, the shapes of some letters resemble those of Greek or Latin. The number of runes in different Old Germanic languages varied. The main functions of runes were short inscriptions on objects. In the OE variety of the Latin alphabet “i” and “j” were not distinguished; nor were “u” and “v”, the letters “k, g, x, w” were not used. The most interesting peculiarity of OE writing was the use of some

runic characters. Some runes were occasionally used not as letters, but as symbols for the words.

*Run əlifbası; рунический алфавит*

**runic writing** - a writing system which developed shortly after the beginning of the Christian era by Germanic tribes and lasted until the sixteenth century.

*Run yazısı; руническое письмо*

**Ruthwell Cross** - the oldest record of English writing in runic inscriptions in the early 8<sup>th</sup> century, stone cross at Ruthwell in south-western Scotland.

*Rutvel Xaçı; Рутвельский крест*

## S

**semantic broadening** - The process in which the meaning of a word becomes more general or more inclusive than its historically earlier form. E.g. the word ‘aunt’ used to mean only father’s sister.

*Semantik genişlənmə; семантическое расширение*

**semantic feature** - the components of meaning that make up a word’s intensity. E.g. “man” has the feature [+ human]; “dog” has the feature [-human].

*Semantik cəhət; семантическое свойство*

**semantic narrowing** - the process in which the meaning of a word becomes less general or less inclusive than its historically earlier meaning. E.g. the word ‘meat’ used to mean any type of food.

*Məna daralması; сужение значения*

**sequential change** - a sound change that involves a sequence of sounds. E.g. assimilation, epenthesis.

*Ardıcıl dəyişmə; последовательное изменение*

**Southern dialects** – South-Western dialects. ME Kentish was a direct descendant of the OE Kentish dialect. The South Western group was a continuation of the OE Saxon dialect, more exactly East-Saxon.

*Səpəbi dialektlər; южные диалекты*

**South Midland (Inland Southern) dialects** - one of the groups of Midland or Central dialects corresponding to the Mercian dialect. It is divided into South-East Midland and South-West Midland.

**Səpibi tərəkəzi dialektlər, южно-центральные диалекты**

**specifically OE words** - words which do not occur in other Old Germanic languages (or non-Germanic languages). E.g. *brid* “bird”, *hlāford* “lord”.

**Sırf qədim ingilis sözləri; собственно древнеанглийские слова**

**specifically Germanic words** - words which occur in Germanic languages only. They have no parallels outside the group and constitute the specific features of Germanic languages: semantically they belong to basic spheres of life. The specifically Germanic words include not only root, but also affixes and word-building patterns. E.g. *hand*, *sea*, *grass*, *green*, *sheep*.

**Sırf german sözləri; исконно германские слова**

**standard language** - the superimposed language variety of a country that is generally employed by the government and the media, taught in schools and is often used as the only or main written language.

**Ədəbi dil (standartlaşmış dil); литературный (стандартный) язык**

**stem** - part of a word to which endings are attached. E.g. *chew+s*, *chew+ed*, *chew+ing* (“chew” is a stem).

**Əsas; основа**

**strong declension of adjectives** – the paradigm of the adjective is similar to that of the pronoun. The grammatical category of case was built up by 5 forms; Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Instrumental. This declension of adjectives had an indefinite meaning, because it is used without any defining word. It is sometimes called

pronominal, as it is declined like demonstrative pronouns. See also *pronominal*.

*Sifətlərin qüvvətli hallanması; сильное склонение прилагательных*

**strong declension of nouns** (vowel declension: a-stem, ja-stem, wa-stem, o-stem, jō-stem, wō-stem, i-stem, u-stem declension) “a-stems” included masculine and neuter nouns. About one third of OE nouns were masculine. “A-stems, wa- and ja-stems” differed from pure “u-stems” in some forms, as their endings contained traces of the elements -j and -w. “ō-stems” were all feminine, so there was no further subdivision according to gender. The other vocalic stems include nouns of different genders.

*İsimlərin qüvvətli hallanması; сильное склонение существительных*

**successive stages of palatal mutation** ( in OE fronting: [a] > [æ] > breaking [æ] > [ea] > palatal mutation > [ie]. The generally accepted phonetic explanation of palatal mutation is that the sounds [i] or [j] palatalized the preceding construction and that this construction in its turn, fronted and raised the root-vowel. The speaker unconsciously anticipates the [i] and [j] in pronouncing the root syllable and adds an i-glide to the root-vowel: dōmjan > dōimjan > dæmjān > dēman (NE deem).

*Saitlərin yumşalmasında ardıcıl mərhələlər; последовательные этапы палатальной мутации*

**suppletion** - one of the oldest means of form-building. It is the replacement of one root by another to express an inflectional contrast. All Indo-European languages and English among them have suppletive verbs – those building different forms from different roots. E.g. bēon – wesān ( to be), zān – ēode (to go), dōn – dyde (to do). The first verb of each of the pairs is the root for the Present tense forms, the second – for the past.

***Supletivizm; суплетивизм***

***synchronic linguistics*** - the study of a language, regardless of its history, as a living whole, existing as a “state” at a particular moment in time. Ferdinand de Saussure sharply distinguished historical (diachronic) and non-historical (synchronic) approaches to language study.

***Sinxronik dilçilik; синхронная лингвистика***

***synchronic study (approach)***- the study of a language system at one particular point in time: e.g. the category of tense in Modern English; the plural of nouns in Old English

***Sinxronik tədqiqat (baxım, yanaşma); синхронное изучение (подход)***

***syncope*** - the loss of one or more medial sounds of a word.

E.g. OE hēafod > ME heved > NE head; OE hlāford > ME loverd > NE lord.

***sinkora (sözün ortasında səsin düşməsi); синкона (выпадение звука внутри слова)***

***synthetic language*** - a language that makes extensive use of polymorphemic words (e.g. words containing a root and one or more affixes) and often uses portmanteau morphemes (also called an ***inflectional language***). E.g. Spanish.

***Sintetik dil; синтетический язык***

***Samuel Johnson*** - one of the 18<sup>th</sup> century scholars who believed that the English language should be purified and corrected. English lexicography is certainly connected with his name.

***Samuel Conson; Самуэль Джонсон***

**T**

***transitive (verb)*** – a verb that takes a direct object and denotes an action or feeling which is directed towards some object. E.g. Ohthēre sæde his hlāforde... “Ohthere said to his lord...” It is opposed to an intransitive verb which denotes a state or condition and feeling.



*Təsirli fel; переходный глагол*

**tribal dialects (Angles, Saxons, Jutes and Frisians)** – They occur in the pre-historic period of Early Old English, which lasted from the West Germanic invasion of Britain till the beginning of writing (5<sup>th</sup>-7<sup>th</sup> centuries). The tribal dialects were used for communication, there being no written form of English.

*Qəbilə dialektləri; племенные диалекты*

**U**

**umlaut** - the assimilation through fronting, backing, raising or lowering of a class of vowels to a set of segments in an immediately neighbouring syllable. E.g. Proto-Germanic fulljan>OE fyllan “fill”; Proto-Germanic zulda>OE zold “gold”.

*Umlaut; умляут*

**V**

**velar-mutation (back umlaut)** –It was caused by the influence of back vowels in the succeeding syllables, which transformed the accented root-vowels into diphthongs: OHG swestar - OE sweostor “sister”. It is found in some of the OE dialects.

*Dilarxası saıtlərin ımşılması; смягчение заднеязычных гласных*

**Verner’s Law** - a generalization made by Karl Verner, which states that an internal voiceless fricative resulting from Grimm’s Law underwent voicing, if the original Proto-Indo-European accent did not immediately precede it. According to this law, in Early Common Germanic at the time of the free word-stress, fricative consonants became voiced, if the preceding vowel was unstressed and the following vowel bore the stress. E.g. Gothic faðar [ð], Old Icel. faðir, OE fæder ( NE father) the word-stress fell on the second syllable (like in Sanscrit pitār). In these conditions the fricative that arose under the Common

Germanic consonant shift appeared as voiced. Alternations of voiceless and voiced consonants due to Verner's Law can be found in grammatical forms of one and the same word derived from the same root. E.g. OE strong verb: ceosan [z] – ceos [s] – ceoron [r] – ceoren [r]

*Verner qanunu; закон Вернера*

**vocalization of the consonants** - upon the Great Vowel Shift the formation of monophthongs, diphthongs and triphthongs vocalized the consonant.

*Saitlærin saitlæsmæsi; вокализация консонантов (согласных)*

**voicing or devoicing** - In Proto-Germanic set of voiceless fricatives [f, θ, x, s] and [v] were subjected to a new process of voicing and devoicing. In Early Old English they became or remained voiced intervocally and between vowels, sonorants and voiced consonants; they remained or became voiceless initially, finally and next to other voiceless consonants.

*Cingiltlæsmæ væ ya karlæsmæ; озвончение или оглушение*

**vowel gradation** - in Indo-European languages word bases consist of a consonant, a vowel and a consonant. By altering the vowel, tense, number or even a part of speech can change. E.g. the OE strong verb: drincan-dranc-druncon-druncen “drink-drank-drunk-drinking”. See also **ablaut**

*Saitlærin ævæzlænsmæsi; чередование гласных*

**vowel interchange** – the earliest set of vowel interchanges is called vowel gradation or ablaut. Ablaut is an independent vowel interchange unconnected with any phonetic condition. Vowel gradation didn't reflect any phonetic changes, but was used as a special independent device to differentiate between words and grammatical forms built from the same root. There are two types of ablaut:

qualitative [e:~a:], [e~o:] and quantitative [a~a:].

*Saitlǣrin dǣyīsməsi; изменение гласных*

W

**weak declension of adjectives** – the paradigm of the adjective which is similar to that of the noun. It had 4 cases in OE: Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative. It had a definite meaning, because it was used with a defining word. It is also called nominal declension, as it is declined like weak nouns. E.g. þæt feorre land “that distant land”.

*Sifǣtlǣrin zǣif hallanmasi; слабое склонение прилагательных*

**weakening** (also called **lenition**) - a type of assimilation in which a lessening in the time or degree of a consonant's closure occurs.

*Zǣiflǣntǣ; ослабление, лениция*

**weakening of meaning** - a semantic change where the meaning of a word is weakened. E.g. the English word “soon” is used to mean ‘immediately’ instead of ‘in the near future’).

*Mǣna zǣiflǣntǣsi; ослабление значения*

**William Caxton (1422-1491)**- the first English printer who published books in 1475. It was a sort of bridge between the Middle English period and the language of the Literary Renaissance.

*Uilyam Kǣkston; Вильям Кекстон*

**William the Conqueror (1027-1087)** - king of England in 1066-1087. As Duke of Normandy he claimed the English throne on the death of the childless “Edward the Confessor”, stating that Edward had promised it to him. He invaded England, defeated Harold at the Battle of Hastings and imposed Norman rule on England.

*Īŕǣlci Vilhelm; Вильгельм Завоеватель*

**William Langland** - one of the famous poets of the late 14<sup>th</sup> century. His poem “The Vision concerning Piers the Plowman” was written in combining West Midland and

London dialects. The poem is written in the old alliteration verse and showed no touch of Anglo-Norman influence.

*Uilyam Lenqland; Вильям Ленгланð*

**Z**

**zero-inflection** - the member of a set of inflectional affixes which is represented by the absence of an expected morpheme. E.g. some uninflected plural forms have survived from OE nouns "scēap (sheep), dēor (deer), swīn (swine) which had a zero affix.

*Sıfır şəkilci; нулевое окончание*

**zero morph** - a morph consisting of no phonetic form. It is proposed in some analyses as an allomorph of a morpheme.

*Sıfır morf; нулевая морфа*

## SECTION 3

### I. CHRONOLOGY OF HISTORICAL EVENTS AFFECTING THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE

- 2500 BC** Britain was inhabited by people who came from Continental Europe. They practiced agriculture. A new wave of migrants introduced bronze-working.
- 55 BC–54 BC** 2 raids of Julius Ceasar on Britain.
- 43 AD** Roman invasion and occupation under Emperor Claudius. Beginning of Roman rule in Britain.
- about 200 AD** The attack of the Goths on Byzantium.
- 367 AD** A successful attack on Britain by the Picts, Scots and Saxons.
- since the IV c.** The North Germanic tribes lived on the southern coast of the Scandinavian Peninsula and in Northern Denmark
- IV-V cc.** The Great migrations of the West Germans.
- 407 AD** With the departure of the last Roman emissary Constantine hostilities among the native tribes in England began.
- 410 AD** The Romans withdrew their last legion from Britain.
- 449 AD** Britain was invaded by some Germanic tribes: Angles, Saxons, Jutes. Frisians.
- 449 AD** The beginning of English with the landing of the Gutish brothers Hengest and Horsa.
- V c.** The expansion of Franks to Gaul.
- V-VI cc.** The flourishing of Ostrogothic culture.
- 597 AD** St. Augustine arrives in Britain. Appearance of Christian conversion in England
- 600 AD** Four principal Germanic tribes: Angles, Saxons, Jutes and Frisians established their separate 7 kingdoms called Heptarchy.

- VI c.** The first attempt to introduce the Roman Christian religion to Anglo-Saxon Britain.
- VII c.** The end of Germanic invasion.
- VII c.** The end of the supremacy of kingdom Kent.
- VII –VIII cc.** The temporary rise of Northumbria.
- 735 AD** The death of the Venerable Bede, the first historian of the English people.
- 793 AD** Viking attacks on Britain began.
- VIII-IX cc.** A high standard of learning was reached in the best English monasteries, especially in Northumbria.
- second half of the VIII c.** The Northmen, particularly the Danes began their raids on the Isles.
- end of the VIII c.** The first inroads of the Scandinavian Vikings.
- 800-1050 AD** The Viking age.
- 825 AD** King Egbert defeats the Mercians at Ellandun and Wessex becomes the leading kingdom of Britain.
- 865 AD** The Danes occupy Northumbria.
- 871-901 AD** The reign of Alfred the Great, during which English culture shifted to the southern kingdoms most of all to Wessex where a cultural efflorescence began.
- about 874 AD** Iceland was colonized by settlers from Norway.
- 878 AD** The victory of the English over the Danes. King Alfred signed the Treaty of Wedmore with the Danes.
- 878 AD** Peace Treaty by which England was divided in two halves; the north-eastern half united under the leadership of half under Danish control and the South – western Wessex ( King Alfred ).
- 893–897 AD** King Alfred's struggle with Danes.
- 899 AD** Death of Alfred the Great.
- beginning of IX c.** Danish invaders destroyed the dynasties of Northumbria, Mercia and East Anglia.

- IX c.** The Chronicles were united at Winchester.
- IX- XI cc.** The florescence of Wessex.
- the middle of the IX c.** The increase of the Scandinavian raids in frequency.
- IX-X cc.** Historical events that led to the linguistic influence.
- IX c.** The continuation and the intermixture of the newcomers with their former foes.
- IX-X cc.** The rise of Wessex to the dominant position among the old English kingdoms.
- 911 AD** Charles II of France grants Normandy to the Viking chief Hrolf the Ganger. The beginning of Norman French.
- late X c.** The renewal of Scandinavian onslaughts under Sweyn.
- 1016-1042** The whole territory of England came under the Scandinavian rule.
- 1017** Canute was acknowledged as king and England became part of a great northern Empire comprising Denmark and Norway.
- 1035** Canute's kingdom broke up and England gained political independence.
- 1042** Canute's death.
- 1042-1066** Edward the Confessor's ruling
- 1066** Edward's death and proclamation of Harold Godwin as king of England.
- October 1066** The battle of Hastings; death of Harold. The beginning of the Norman Conquest.
- XIc.** Feudalism in Britain was already well established.
- early XI c.** Reaching a new climax by Danes headed by Sweyn and Canute.
- XII c.** The foundation of Oxford and Cambridge Universities.
- late XII c.** The renewal of the Danish raids.
- late XII c.** The first attempts of the English to conquer Ireland.
- 1204** The loss of Normandy by King John.

- 1284** The conquest of Wales completed by Edward I of England.
- XIII c.** The appearance of the first Parliament.
- late XIII c.** The subjugation of Wales to the Normans.
- XIV c.** The falling of Norway under Danish rule.
- 1314** The defeat of the army of Edward II by Robert Bruce.
- 1338** The beginning of the Hundred Years' War between England and France.
- 1349** The Black Death kills one third of the British population.
- 1362** The consent of Edward III to the act of Parliament regarding the use of English in England.
- 1399-1413** The rule of King Henry IV, the first king after the Conquest whose mother tongue was English.
- 1455** The first battle of the wars of the Roses fought at St. Albans.
- 1455-1485** The war of the Roses.
- 1485-1509** The first king of the New English period, Henry VII.
- 1485** The end of the War between the White and Red Roses.
- 1492** Columbus discovers the New World.
- the last quarter of XV c.** England becomes a centralized state.
- XV-XVI cc.** General efflorescence of culture in Western Europe.
- 1509-1547** The reign of Henry VIII.
- 1536** The first act of Union unites England and Wales.
- 1547-1553** The reign of Henry VIII's son, Edward VI.
- 1558-1603** The reign of Queen Elizabeth.
- 1558** The defeat of the "Invincible Armada".
- late XVI c.** The beginning of England's colonial expansion to the New World.
- 1603** The unification of Scotland with England under the Stuarts.
- 1607** Jamestown, the first permanent English settlement in the New World.



- 1619** The arrival of “May Flower” to New England.
- 1660** The restoration of monarchy in England by King Charles II.
- 1662** The Royal Society of London for the Promotion of Natural knowledge received its Charter.
- XVII c.** The time of the Restoration of Monarchy in Britain.
- 1776** Thomas Jefferson, the third US president wrote the Declaration of Independence.
- 1788** British penal colony established.

## **II. CHRONOLOGY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE**

- XV c.–X c. BC** The emergence of Proto-Germanic language.
- I BC-I AD** Common Germanic stratum is supposed to exist.
- III-IV cc.** The earliest records in other Germanic languages.
- IV-VI cc.** The written records of the Gothic language
- 449-1100** Old English Period
- 450-480** The Earliest Old English inscriptions date from this period.
- V AD** The history of English begins.
- 450-700 AD** Early Old English Period (Pre-written OE).
- V-VI cc.** Ulfila’s Gospels.
- 540-604** Cura Pastoralis (Pastoral Care) of Pope Gregory”.
- 597 AD** Introduction of Latin literacy to England.
- 597 AD** “St. Augustine’s mission”.
- 600-1100** Old High German.
- VII-IX cc.** Heptarchy local dialects.
- VII c.** The earliest extant written texts in English.
- 673-735 AD** Bede, a monastic scholar, the author of the first history of England “Historia Ecclesiastica Gentis Anglorum”.
- 731 AD** The Venerable Bede published “The Ecclesiastical History of the English people” in Latin.

- VIII cc.** “Beowulf”, an epic poem in Old English.
- 871 AD** King Alfred who had Latin works translated into English and began practice of English prose. The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle was written.
- VIII c.** The first written records in the Anglo-Saxon language.
- 700-1066** Written Period of Old English.
- VIII-IX cc.** The earliest “Anglo-Saxon Charters”.
- VIII-XI cc.** The second historical (Old English or Anglo-Saxon) period.
- IX c.** Orosius’s “World History” by Alfred the Great.
- until the IX c.** The speech of the North Germanic tribes showed little dialectal variation.
- IX c.** The disintegration of Old Norse into separate dialects and languages.
- IX-X cc.** Domination of the Wessex dialect (The main dialect of the OE period).
- 1000 AD** The oldest surviving manuscript of “Beowulf” dates from this period.
- X c.** West Saxon copy of “Beowulf”.
- X c.** The earliest texts in low Franconian
- X c.** Historical chronicles: the Battle of Brunanburh, the Battle of Maldon.
- X c.** The West Saxon dialect established itself as the written form of English.
- 1066-1350** Early Middle English Period.
- 1100-1500** Middle English Period.
- XI c.** The written form of the West Saxon dialect developed into a bookish type of the language.
- XI-XII cc.** The increase of regional differences of English due to the Scandinavian influence.
- XI c.** The falling of Scotland under English linguistic competence.
- after XI-XIII cc.** The period of Anglo-Norman dominance  
English regains its prestige as a language of writing.

- 1122-1154** “Peterborough Chronicle”.
- 1150** The oldest surviving manuscripts of Middle English date this period.
- XII-XIII cc.** “Tales of King Arthur and his Round Table” written in verse and in prose.
- XII c.** The Elder Edda (The Poetic Edda)
- XII c.** The intermixing of High German with neighbouring tongues.
- XII c.** The earliest old Dutch records.
- XII c.** A gap in English literary tradition.
- XII-XIII cc.** Early ME as the basis of London dialect.
- end of XII c.** The appearance of works in the vernacular (mostly of a religious nature).
- late XII c. or early XIII c.** Poema Morale (“Moral Ode”) representing the Kentish dialect.
- XII–XIII cc.** The coming of inhabitants of London from the South Western districts.
- 1205** “Brut” (a poem) by Layamon.
- 1200** “Ormulum“ written in the North-East Midland dialect.
- 1204** The end of the first Middle English period.
- 1250-1350** The time when English was reasserting itself throughout the country.
- 1250-1400** The second period of Middle English.
- 1258** The London Proclamation (Early ME text) of King Henry III in French, Latin and English.
- XII–XIII cc.** The Scandinavian element was incorporated in the central English dialects.
- XIII c.** Old Danish, Old Norwegian and Old Swedish written records.
- XIII c.** Works of religious nature: “Ancrene Riwe (The Rule of Anchoritis)”; “Cursor Mundi (The Runner Round the World)“; “The Pricke of Conscience”.
- late XIII c.** “Havelok the Dane”, a book on the adventures of a

- Danish prince “King Horn”, a love story.
- XIII-XIV cc.** The flourishing of the Scottish language.
- 1324-1384** John Wycliffe, the forerunner of the English Reformation.
- 1343-1400** Geoffrey Chaucer, English poet, the founder of the national English language.
- 1348** English replaces Latin as the medium of instruction in schools other than Oxford and Cambridge which retain Latin.
- 1350-1475** Classical (or Late) Middle English.
- 1362** The Statute of Pleading replaces Latin as the language of Law. Records continue to be kept in Latin. English is used in Parliament and Court of Law for the first time.
- 1362-1390** Three versions of “The Vision Concerning Piers the Plowman” by William Langland.
- 1373-1378** “The Bruce” by John Barbour.
- 1384** The completion of translation of the Bible by John Wycliffe and his pupils.
- 1385** English was introduced in schools.
- 1386** “Polychronicon” by John de Trevisa of Cornwall (the translation from Latin into the South-Western dialect of English by R.Higden).
- 1388** G.Chaucer begins the collection of stories “Canterbury Tales”.
- early XIV c.** Political poems, e.g. “Evil times of Edward II”.
- until XIV c.** Dialects retain a certain literary authority, but then are suppressed by the London dialect.
- XIV c.** The end of the domination of French in England.
- XIV c.** Anglo-Norman became a dead language.
- XIV c.** Poems “ Pearl” , “Patience”, “Cleanness” and “Sir Gawaine and the Green Knight”, written by an unknown poet.
- XIV c.** “Ay Enbite of Inwit” by Dan Michael (Kentish dialect).
- XIV c.** A versified Chronicle by Robert of Gloucester (South,

- West Midland dialect).
- XIV c.** J. Wycliffe's "Richard Coeur de Lion", G. Chaucer's works, T. Gower's works (London dialect). Adam Davy's poems; Romances of Chivalry: Miracle Plays (Midland or East Midland dialect).
- XIV c.** Formation of the national English language.
- XIV- XV cc.** The Age of Chaucer.
- XIV- XV cc.** Grouping of local dialects: the Southern group, the Midland group and the Northern group.
- late XIV c.** Official and literary papers are produced in London.
- late XIV c.** The emergence of London dialect.
- the second half of the XIV c.** The flourishing of English literature.
- the end of XIV c.** The replacement of French by English as the language of literature and administration.
- by the end of the XIV c.** The first English translation of the Bible.
- 1400** The death of G. Chaucer, the English poet.
- 1415** Chancery English.
- 1422-1491** William Caxton, the first English printer.
- 1438** The invention of printing ("Artificial writing") in Germany by Johannes Gutenberg.
- 1471** Thomas Malory's "Morte D'Arthur (Death of Arthur).
- 1472** William Caxton opens his own printing press in Bruges.
- 1475-1660** Early New English period.
- 1475** The first English book printed in Bruges: William Caxton's translation of "Recuyell of the Histories of Troye".
- 1475** The introduction of printing. The first book to be printed in English by William Caxton in England was called "The Dictes and Sayings of the Philosophers".
- 1478-1535** The great English humanist Thomas More.
- 1485** W. Caxton publishes T. Malory's "Morte d'Arthur".

- 1499** The first English-Latin Dictionary.
- XV c.** Hoccleve's poems; Lydgate's poems; "Morte D' Arthur" by Thomas Malory (London dialect).
- XV c.** York plays (Midland or East Midland dialect).
- XV c.** Poems: "Wallace" by Henry the Minstrel; "King's Quhair" (King's Book) by King James I of Scotland.
- XV-XVI cc.** The abundant contribution of Dutch to English.
- the later half of the XV c.** London English (Standard English).
- XV-XVI cc.** The Epoch of the Renaissance. (The beginning of the Early New English)
- XV-XVI cc.** The reflection of French orthography.
- XV-XVII cc.** The age of W. Shakespeare.
- 1500-1660** Early New English
- 1524** "The Arte or Crafte of Rhetorique" by Leonard Cox.
- 1525-1611** The Tudor Golden Age with its culmination in W. Shakespeare.
- 1526** The completion of a new English translation of the Bible "New Testament" by William Tyndale.
- 1529-1536** The English Reformation.
- 1545** "Toxophilus" by R. Ascham.
- 1546** The completion of "Utopia" by Thomas More.  
"Utopia" was first translated into English.
- 1551** "Arte of Rhetorique" by Thomas Wilson
- 1561-1626** Francis Bacon and his chief work "Novum Organum" in Latin.
- 1564-1616** William Shakespeare, the chief of the Elizabethan dramatists.
- 1568** "The Dialogue concerning the correct and emended writing of the English language" by Thomas Smith.
- 1568** "An Orthographic" by John Hart.
- 1580** "The Arte of English Poesie" by R. Puttenham.
- 1603** The first English explanatory dictionary "Table Alphabetical Containing and Teaching the True Writing and Understanding of Hard Usual English words,

- borrowed from the Hebrew , Greek, Latin or French”  
published by Robert Cawdrey.
- 1611** The official approval of the Authorized Version King James Bible.
- 1616** The interpretation of the hardest words used in our language by John Bullakar.
- 1619** “Logonomia Anglica” by Alexander Gill
- 1622** Publication of the first series of English newspaper “Weekly News”.
- 1623** Folio, the first collected edition of W.Shakespeare’s plays.
- 1622** “English Dictionary” by Henry Cockeram.
- 1653** “Grammatica Linguae Anglicanae” by John Wallis.
- 1660-1800** Early New English. Normalization Period (Age of Correctness, Neo-Classical Period ).
- 1664** A special committee for improving the English language.
- 1667-1745** Jonathan Swift, the English satirist.
- 1676** “Dictionary of Hard Words” by E. Coles.
- XVII c.** Appearance of an English newspaper.
- XVII c.** The first publishing of Ulfila’s Gospel.
- XVII c.** Appearance of American English.
- XVII-XVIII cc.** Establishment of literary norm of the English language.
- XVII-XVIII cc.** The appearance of first English dictionaries and grammar books.
- middle of XVII c.** The establishment of Written Standard.
- 1711-1741** The magazine “The Spectator“ published by Joseph Addison and Richard Steele .
- 1712** “A Proposal for Correcting, Improving and Ascertaining the English Tongue” written by Jonathan Swift.
- 1730** “Dictionarium Britannicum, a more complete universal etymological English dictionary than any extant” by Nathaniel Bailey.

- 1755** Samuel Johnson published his dictionary.
- 1759-1796** Robert Burns, the Scottish poet.
- 1761** J. Priestley's "The Rudiments of English Grammar".
- 1761** "A Short Introduction to English Grammar" by Robert Lowth.
- 1795** "English Grammar adapted to the different classes of learners" by Lindley Murray.
- 1799** Publishing of an "English Reader".
- XVII-XX cc.** Geographical expansion of English.
- XVIII c.** Appearance of English in India.
- XVIII c.** The Age of Correctness" in which the wide range of variation acceptable in W.Shakespeare's day was condemned.
- XVIII c.** Literary English differentiates in distinct styles.
- XVIIIc.** Reemergence of Scottish English into literary eminence.
- XVIII c.** First Faroese records.
- the middle of the XVIII c.** Formation of the publicistic style in English.
- end of the XVIII c.** The formation of the national literary English language.
- 1800- up to the present** Late New English.
- 1828** "Dictionary of the English language" by Noah Webster.
- 1857** Richard Trench, dean of St. Paul's, lectured to the Philological Society on the theme "On Some Deficiencies in our English Dictionaries".
- 1864** Foundation of the Early English Text Society.
- 1884** Publishing of "A New English Dictionary on Historical Principles" edited by A.H.Murray.
- XIX c.** The formation of the main functional divisions of the national English language.
- XIX c.** The expansion of English overseas together with the growth of the British Empire.
- XIX c.** Appearance of English in Australia, New Zealand



- (Australian English, New Zealandish English variants)
- XIX c.** The pre-written history of English and cognate languages was first studied by methods of comparative linguistics.
- XIX c.** The emergence of 2 varieties of the Norwegian tongue.
- XIX c.** The relative stability of English.
- XIX-XX cc.** Late New English or Modern English.
- 1922** British Broadcasting Company founded.
- 1928** The Oxford English Dictionary is published.
- XX c.** Intermixture of dialects. The use of jargons, slangs, etc.
- 1933** A revised edition of “The Oxford English Dictionary”.

### ***1. HISTORICAL PHONETICS AND SPELLING***

- I c.** The earliest Germanic runes are dated to this period.
- II-III cc.** ‘The Runic Alphabet’ was composed by Germanic scribes.
- III-VIII cc.** Runic inscriptions were used.
- 450-480** Earliest Old English inscriptions date from this period.
- V-VI cc.** Types of mutation took place in Germanic languages
- V c.** The appearance of [æ, æ:]
- V-VII cc.** In Early OE the would-be English language consisted of a group of spoken tribal dialects having neither a written nor a dominant form.
- VI-VII cc.** Appearance of Palatal Mutation (i-Umlaut) in OE.
- 600** Second (High German) Consonant Shift occurred.
- VI c.** The process of OE breaking took place.
- VII c.** The beginning of writing.
- VII c.** Latin characters were first used in Britain.
- VII-XII cc.** Use of OE “insular writing”, i.e. the alphabet typical of the Isles.
- VIII c.** The principal written records with the so-called “Runic Alphabet” (24 letters).

- IX c.** The first lengthening of vowels.
- IX c.** Palatalization of consonants [k']>[tʃ], [sk']>[ʃ], [gg]>[dʒ].
- IX-X cc.** Lengthening of short vowels before the consonant clusters [ld, nd, mb, rd, ng].
- X c.** The existence of vowels [y] and [y:] in OE dialects and their replacement by [e], [e:] in Kentish.
- XI c.** Shortening of all long vowels before 2 consonants.
- By the end of the XI c.** Narrowing of the open vowel [æ]>[ɛ:].
- XII-XIII cc.** The second lengthening of short vowels in stressed open syllables [a>a: e>e: o>o:].
- XII c.** Replacement of OE writing by Carolingian scripts.
- XII c.** Disappearance of runic signs “þ, ð, ȝ”.
- XII-XIII c.** The letters “v” and “u” could interchange without any difference: driuen/driven, loue/love.
- XII-XIII cc.** Alteration in the treatment of vowel quantity.
- XII-XIII cc.** Qualitative change of [a:]>[o:]: stān>stōn.
- XIII c.** Qualitative change of [æ]>[a]: þæt>that; wæs>was.
- XIII c.** Disappearance of the ligatures “æ, œ”.
- XIII c.** Dropping of the phoneme [x].
- XIII-XIV cc.** Lengthening of preceding short stressed vowels.
- XIII-XIV cc.** The appearance of the diphthong [ɔɪ] in such words of French origin, as “choice, voice (<Fr.choix, voix).
- XIV c.** The instability of the reduced ending “-e [ə]” in English.
- XIV c.** Words were pronounced as they spelt, the Latin letters retaining their original sound values.
- XIV c.** The reading of the digraphs “ai, ae” as the open long vowel [ɛ:].
- 1399** The beginning of the Great Vowel Shift.
- At the beginning of the XVc.** The change of long vowels into diphthongs [i:]>[ei]>[ai]:time ['ti:mə] > [teim] > [taim].

- XV c.** The palatalization of the short vowel [a] > [æ]: that, cat.
- XV c.** Loss of the palatal phoneme [x] and its positional variant [x'] in connection with the lengthening of the preceding vowel: light [lix't]>[li:t]; thought [θouxt]>[θɔ:t].
- XV c.** Loss of the aspirated [h] in such words, as “forehead, shepherd”.
- 1500-1650** The Great Vowel Shift (Early New English).
- XVI c.** Shortening of a vowel before dental consonants: OE heafod > ME head > hed [he:d] >[hed].
- XVI c.** The qualitative change of the diphthong [au] > [ɔ:]: autumn.
- XVI c.** Shortening of long vowels “ea” [e:] and “oo” [u:] before dental digraphs: dead, bread, blood, flood.
- XVI c.** Voicing of voiceless fricatives [f],[s],[θ]: that [θ]>[ð].
- XVI c.** Loss of [b] and [n] after [m] in word-final [mb]>[m]; [mn]>[m]: climb, comb, autumn.
- XVI c.** Simplification of the combination of 3 consonants in word-final: [stl]>[sl] castle, whistle; [stn]>[sn] listen, fasten; [ftn]>[fn] often, soften.
- XVI-XVII cc.** Shortening of long vowels [ɛ:]>[e], [u:]>[u] before [d],[θ]: breed [brɛ:d] > bread [bred], blood [blu:d]> [blud].
- XVI-XVII cc.** The vocalization of the consonant [r].
- XVI-XVII cc.** The evolution of long vowels (from Middle English long vowels and diphthongs).
- XVI-XVII c.** The alveolar consonants [s,z,t,d] in combination with [j] changed into palatal-alveolar sibilants: ancient, decision, soldier.
- XVI- early XVII c.** The last consonant was lost in the final consonant clusters “mb, mn, ng”.
- until XVII c.** The pronunciation of the letter names “u” [ju:] and double “u” [ˈdʌblju:].
- XVII c.** Lengthening of the vowel [a] before the consonants

- “ss, ft, nt”: grass, after, plant.
- second half of the XVII c.** Simplification of initial consonant groups “kn, gn, wr : knife, gnaw, write.
- At the end of the XVI c.- the first half of the XVII c.** The change of the short monophthong:[u]>(o)>[ʌ]: flood, mother, sun.
- XVII-XVIII cc.** Voicing of voiceless consonants [s],[ks],[tʃ]: [s]>[z]; [ks]>[gz]; [tʃ]>[dʒ]: exhibition – exhibit; luxury – luxurious.
- XVIII c.** Shortening of the long vowel [u:] > [u] before [k], [t]: book [bo:k] > [bu:k] > [buk]; foot [fo:t] > [fu:t] > [fut];
- 1755** The use of “regular and solemn” pronunciation in the famous English Dictionary by Samuel Johnson.
- XVIII c.** The period of fixing the pronunciation.
- 1822** German linguist Jacob Grimm presented a scheme of correspondences between IE and Germanic languages as the first Germanic Consonant Shift (J. Grimm’s Law).
- XIXc.** The simplification of English morphology was attributed to the effect of phonetic changes, i.e the weakening and loss of unaccented syllables caused by the heavy Germanic word stress.

## **2. HISTORICAL GRAMMAR**

- At the end of Old English** Loss of declension of the Infinitive.
- X- XI cc.** The decay of inflectional endings in Northern dialects.
- ME** Loss of declension of the Participle.
- ME** Simplification of a noun paradigm.
- ME** Formation of a new class of words – articles.
- XI-XII cc.** The influence of the weak declension ending “-en” in the noun paradigm.
- XI-XII cc.** Formation of Common Case of nouns.

- XI c.** Disappearance of gender which ceased to be distinguished by the adjective.
- XI-XII cc.** The increase of variants of grammatical forms.
- XI-XII cc.** The deprivation of gender in nouns, the weakened and levelled endings in adjectives and adjectival pronouns.
- XI-XII cc.** The use of the demonstrative pronoun became more common.
- XI-XII cc.** The lowering of relative pronouns and conjunctions with þ(th): þe, þa, ða, þær, þæm and the use of the conjunction and demonstrative pronoun “that”.
- XI-XII cc.** The use of prepositions, prepositional phrases and tendencies of formation of analytical forms.
- XII c.** The decay of inflectional endings in the Midlands.
- XII c.** The earliest instances of a verbal noun resembling Gerund.
- XII-XVIII cc.** The changes in the formation of principal parts of English strong verbs.
- XIII c.** The use of the plural ending of strong declension of nouns “-es” in Northern, Central and London dialects.
- XIII c.** The decay of inflectional endings in the southern dialects in Middle English.
- XIII c.** The uninflected numeral “on/one” and their reduced forms as an indefinite article “an/a” are firmly established in all regions.
- XIII-XIV cc.** The use of English “of-phrases”.
- XIII-XIV cc.** The change of the ending “-en” to the main almost universal ending.
- XIII-XIV cc.** The appearance of a new plural ending –s.
- XIV c.** The ending “-e” of the Genitive singular became almost universal (with several exceptions – nouns, preferably used in an uninflected form : names of relationships terminating in “r”, some proper names and some nouns in stereotyped phrases).

- XIV c.** Plural forms were sometimes contrasted to the singular forms with the help of the ending “-e” in the strong declension.
- XIV c.** Certain distinctions between weak and strong forms and also between singular and plural are found in the works of G. Chaucer and J. Gower.
- At the end of ME** Appearance of new grammatical analytical forms, Voice and Aspect categories.
- At the end of ME** Appearance of Subjunctive Mood.
- In ME and ENE** Conjugation of verbals and disappearance of their nominal categories
- In Middle English** Formation of the Future tense.
- XV c.** The loss of the last traces of agreement in adjectives; the dropping of the inflection “-e”.
- XV c.** The two Past tense stems of the verb merged.
- XV c.** The dropping of the ending “-en”.
- XV c.** The plural forms of the 2-nd person “-ye, you, your” are applied more and more generally to individuals.
- XV c.** Number distinctions were neutralized in most positions.
- XV c.** The state of nominal categories in Late Middle English was the same as in Modern English.
- XV-XVI c.** Substitution of the Genitive case of personal pronouns by Possessive pronouns.
- XV-XVI cc.** The frequent confusion of “be+Participle I” with “be+preposition+on” (or its reduced form) and verbal noun.
- XV-XVII cc.** The use of the so-called “double comparatives” and “double superlatives” in Early New English texts.
- XV-XVIII cc.** The growth of usage of link verbs in the sentence.
- XVI-XVII cc.** Compound forms of the Infinitive and new Continuous and Perfect Continuous forms.
- XVI-XVII cc.** The final stabilization of the word order.
- XVI-XVII cc.** The structure of the sentence became more

complicated.

- XVII c.** The use of “s” for the Genitive case of nouns.
- 1653** John Wallis’ first formulation of the rule about the regular interchange of “shall” and “will” depending on person.
- XVII c.** “Will” was sometimes used in a shortened form “ll” .
- XVII c.** The appearance of the construction “to be going to”.
- XVII c.** The form “its” replaced the Old English “his” to distinguish the neuter gender from the masculine.
- XVII c.** The use of relative pronouns “who” for persons and “which” for things.
- XVII-XVIII cc.** The word order in sentences was determined by the same rules as operate in English today.
- XVII-XVIII cc.** A replacement in the set of personal pronouns.
- XVII-XVIII cc.** The two sets of forms - synthetic and analytical, were used in free variation.
- XVII-XVIII cc.** The conformation of the change of “shall” and “will” into form words is found in the rules of usage in grammar.
- XVII-XVIII cc.** Compound forms of Gerund.
- XVII-XVIII cc.** The formal distinctions which developed in the system of verbals were practically the same as in Modern English.
- 1711** The humble petition of “who” and “which “ by R . Steele.
- XVIII c.** The evolution of English syntax.
- XVIII c.** The employment of connectives as well as the structure of the sentence was subjected to logical regulation in the works of the best stylists: J.Dryden, S.Johnson, R. Steele, J.Addison, J. Swift, D.Defoe and others.
- XVIII-XIX cc.** The use of “should”, the dominant auxiliary for the first person, “would” for the second and third persons.

- end of XVIII c.** “-(e)s” became the dominant inflexion of the third person singular in all forms of speech.
- end of XVIII c.** The establishment of the modern differentiation in the usage of synthetic and analytical forms.

### **3. HISTORICAL LEXICOLOGY**

- VI-VII cc.** The second great stratum of Latin words entered the English language (with the introduction of Christianity)
- VIII-IX cc.** Scandinavian borrowings.
- VIII c.** The Corpus and Epiral glossaries.
- X- XI cc.** The penetration of Scandinavian words into the Northern dialects. The so-called “Golden Age “ of the parent language.
- XI-XII cc.** Introduction of the so-called “learned words”.
- ME** Formation of Scandinavian doublets.
- 1251-1400** French borrowings.
- ME** Formation of French doublets.
- XII-XIII cc.** The occupation of all the important posts in the Church by the Norman clergy and as a result of it the penetration of French religious words into English.
- XIII c. up to 1500** The influx of Parisian French borrowings (Late ME) and the formation of etymological doublets..
- 1204** French borrowings (beginning with the time of Edward the Confessor and continued up to the loss of Normandy).
- XIV-XVI cc.** Numerous synonyms in English texts with the adjectival prefix “in-“ (and its variants “in-/im-/il-/ir-“).
- XIV-XVII cc.** Navy and military terms of Dutch origin.
- XV c.** The earliest derivatives in English formed with the help of Franco-Latin prefixes.
- XV-XVI cc.** Appearance of new words by conversion in New English borrowings in Early New English.



- XV-XVI cc.** The growth of the use of prefixes after a temporary decline.
- XV-XVII cc.** Greek borrowings in English.
- XVI c.** The entrance of the earliest Russian loan-words into English.
- XVI c.** “-re” began to be applied as a means of word-derivation.
- XVI c.** The use of military terms of French origin.
- XVI c.** German borrowings in English.
- XVI-XVII cc.** Spanish borrowings in English.
- XVII c.** French borrowings. The time of Restoration.
- XVII-XVIII cc.** Spread of English in the United States.
- XVII-XIV cc.** The exposure of English to a new wave of French influence.
- XVIII c.** The use of French borrowings meaning amusement.
- XVIII-XIX cc.** The creation of translation-loans on German models from native English components as the most peculiar feature of German influence on the English vocabulary.
- XVIII-XIX cc.** Appearance of loanwords (German, French, Indian, Chinese, Arabic, Australian, Russian, Greek, Latin).
- XIX c.** Political, diplomatic and juridicial terms of French origin.
- XX c.** Intermixture of dialects. Early New English. Appearance of ‘foreign plurals’ (borrowings from Latin).

## **BIBLIOGRAPHICAL REFERENCES AND BACKGROUND READING**

1. Abbot E.A., A Shakespearian Grammar. London: Macmillan, 1870
2. Baugh A.C A History of the English Language. L.N.Y. Prentice Hall, 1992
3. Baugh A.C. and Thomas Cable. A History of the English Language, 3rd ed. London: RKP, 1978
4. Berndt Roff. A History of the English Language. Leipzig. 1984
5. Blake N.F. The English Language in Medieval Literature. Routledge, 1979
6. Blake N.F. Language of Shakespeare. Macmillan Ltd. 1994
7. Bradley H. The Making of English. London. Macmillan Ltd. 1992
8. Brook G.L. The Language of Charles Dickens. London: Deutsch, 1970
9. Burnley D. The History of the English Language. London. 2000
10. Burnley D. The Language of Chaucer. London: Macmillan, 1989
11. Campbell A.. Old English Grammar. Oxford: Clarendon, 1969.
12. Cannon G. A History of the English Language. Harcourt Brace J.Inc. 1972
13. Corns Thomas N. Milton's Language. Oxford: Blackwell, 1990.
14. Elliott R.W.V. Chaucer's English. London: Deutsch, 1974.
15. Fisiak J. A Bibliography of Writings for the History of the English Language. Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter, 1987
16. Hulme Hilda M. Explorations in Shakespeare's Language. London: Longman, 1982.
17. Ilyish B.A. History of the English Language. Leningrad (St.Petersburg). 1973
18. Jack C. Richards, John Platt, Heidi Platt. Longman Dictionary of Language Teaching and Applied Linguistics. 1992.
19. Jespersen O. Growth and Structure of the English Language. Oxford. Blackwell. 1975
20. Jespersen O. A Modern English Grammar on Historical Principles. Part 3. Copenhagen. 1948
21. Jones Charles. A History of English Phonology. London: Longman. 1989
22. Jordan Richard. Handbook of Middle English Grammar: Phonology. Translated and revised by Eugene J. Crook. The Hague:

- Mouton, 1974.
23. Malone K. The Old English period (to 1100)- In: A Literary History of England. I. ed. A.C. Baugh et al. L. 1950
  24. McLaughlin J. Old English Syntax: A Handbook. Tübingen, 1983
  25. Mustanoja T.F., Middle English Syntax. Helsinki. 1960.
  26. Potter S. Our Language. Penguin Books. Ltd. 1964
  27. Prins A.A. A History of English Phonemes. Leiden: Leiden UP, 1972
  28. Quirk R. The Use of English. Longmans. London. 1962
  29. Quirk Randolph, Sidney Greenbaum, Geoffrey Leech and Jan Svartvik. A Comprehensive Grammar of the English Language. London: Longman, 1985
  30. Rastorguyeva T.A. A History of English. Moscow. 1983
  31. Reznik R.V., Sorokina T.S., Reznik I.V. A History of the English Language. Moscow. Nauka.2001.
  32. Schlauch M. The English Language in Modern Times. Warszawa. 1964
  33. Strang Barbara M.H. A History of English. London: Methuen, 1970.
  34. Sweet Henry. The Practical Study of Language. London: Dent, 1899.
  35. Tajima, Matsuji. Old and Middle English Language Studies. A Classified Bibliography 1923-1985. Amsterdam/ Philadelphia: Benjamins, 1988.
  36. Visser F.Th. An Historical Syntax of the English Language. 3 vols. Leiden: Brill, 1970-73.
  37. Wyld H.C. A History of Modern Colloquial English. Oxford: Blackwell, 1936
  38. Wyld H.C. A Short History of English. 3-rd ed. L. 1963
  39. Adilov M.İ., Verdiyeva Z.N., Aqayeva F.M. İzahlı dilçilik terminləri. Bakı. Maarif.1989.
  40. Аракин В.Д.История английского языка.М.,1980.
  41. Аракин В.Д. Очерки по истории английского языка. М., 1956.
  42. Ахманова О.С. Словарь лингвистических терминов. М., изд-во СЭ, 1966.
  43. Бруннер К. История английского языка (перевод с немецкого). I-II, М., 1956.
  44. Раşayeva М.М. İngilis dilinin tarixi (qədim dövr). Bakı, 1972.
  45. Смирницкий А.И. Древнеанглийский язык. М., 1955.

46. Смирницкий А.И. История английского языка (средний и новый период). М., 1965.
47. Ярцева В.Н. Историческая морфология английского языка. М., 1960.
48. Ярцева В.Н. Исторический синтаксис английского языка. М., 1961 .
49. Ярцева В. Н. Развитие национального литературного английского языка. М., Наука, 1962.
50. Ярцева В. Н. История английского литературного языка. IX-XV вв. М., Наука, 1985

#### **Websites on the History of the English Language**

1. [www.sitesforteachers.com](http://www.sitesforteachers.com)
2. [www.english-literature.org](http://www.english-literature.org)
3. [www.bbc.co.uk](http://www.bbc.co.uk)
4. [www.wordcentre.co.uk](http://www.wordcentre.co.uk)
5. [www.napoleon.org](http://www.napoleon.org)
6. [www.routledge.com](http://www.routledge.com)
7. [www.cardiff.ac.uk](http://www.cardiff.ac.uk)
8. [www.kcte.org](http://www.kcte.org)
9. [www.library.unt.edu](http://www.library.unt.edu)
10. [www.marksesl.com](http://www.marksesl.com)
11. [www.englishclub.com](http://www.englishclub.com)
12. [www.academics.vmi.edu](http://www.academics.vmi.edu)
13. [www.webtech.kennesaw.edu](http://www.webtech.kennesaw.edu)
14. [www.library.utoronto.ca](http://www.library.utoronto.ca)
15. [www.public.iastate.edu](http://www.public.iastate.edu)
16. [www.brittannica.com](http://www.brittannica.com)
17. [www.library.scsu.ctstateu.edu](http://www.library.scsu.ctstateu.edu)
18. [www.bl.uk](http://www.bl.uk)
19. [www.members.aol.com](http://www.members.aol.com)

*Nəşriyyatın direktoru – Telman Vəlixanlı*  
*İcraçı direktor - Əliş Ağamirzəyev*  
*Texniki redaktor - Mətanət Qaraxanova*

Çapa imzalanıb: 25.05.05.  
Format 60x84 1/16. Qarnitur Times.  
Həcmi 20,75 ç.v. Tiraj 300. Sifariş 62.  
Qiyməti muqavilə yolu ilə.

«Mütərcim» TM NPM  
Bakı, Rəsul Rza küç., 125  
tel./faks 499 21 44  
e-mail: [mutarjim@mail.ru](mailto:mutarjim@mail.ru)

«Qızıl Şərq mətbəəsi» ATSC  
Bakı, H.Aslanov küç., 80  
tel: 494 25 66